



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

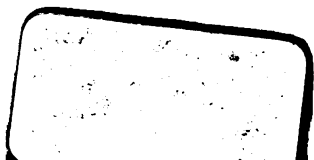
About Google Book Search

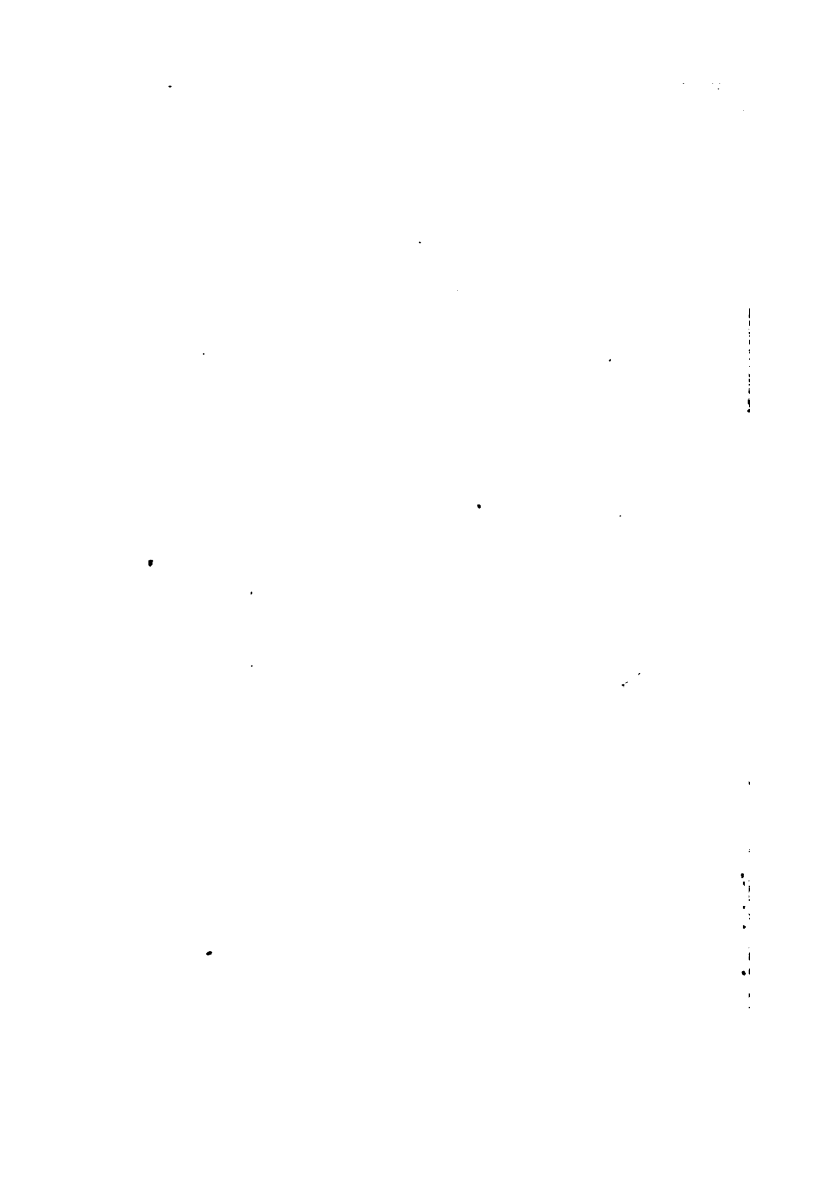
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



1840.

177.





1840.

177.





AN
OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY
OF
ANCIENT AND MODERN
R O M E ;

COMPRISING
AN ACCOUNT OF ITALY,
FROM ITS MOST REMOTE ANTIQUITY TO THE PRESENT TIME,
AND EMBODYING
THE HISTORY OF CHRISTIANITY,
FROM ITS EARLIEST DATE.
IN QUESTION AND ANSWER.

~~~~~  
BY  
MRS. CHARLES DE HAVILLAND.

SECOND EDITION.

LONDON :  
PUBLISHED BY HOULSTON & STONEMAN,  
65, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1840.

177.





LONDON:  
PRINTED BY RICHARD CLAY, BREAD STREET HILL.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS Second Edition of an outline of the "History of Ancient and Modern Rome," has been carefully revised by the authoress, and a few additional questions, which are no less entertaining than instructive, have been introduced. In the preface of the first edition is enumerated the various authors from whose works her book is compiled, and other recent publications have since then been consulted, in order that the facts selected for the memory of youth should be based on the best possible authority. In saying this, it is necessary to notice that the occasional discrepancy of historians renders some exercise of private judgment unavoidable, for it not unfrequently happens that

one writer will treat as fable what another asserts to be fact ; and even when the era of darkness ceases, historical annals are so often dictated in the high colouring of party, as to require much consideration to arrive at truth, divested of partiality or prejudice. Opinions consequently are apt to vary regarding authorities, concerning which the only remark the writer has to make is that, after comparing many, and those the most generally received, and having no undue bias to one more than another, she has uniformly chosen what appeared to her the most approved and unexceptionable.

The history of Italy is a study of the deepest interest, replete with stirring events, with epochs of elevation and of degradation, of colossal grandeur and of ruinous decay, embracing every variety of government and of judicial legislation. At one period we observe the Senate, in the plenitude of its power, enforcing decrees to annihilate the Christian name; then (and

who is so insensible as not to pause?) arises a bright and glowing page in history, bearing testimony to that same Roman senate entering into a rational discussion of the comparative merits of Paganism and Christianity, and, from conviction that the Christian religion was undoubtedly divine,—that it was indeed “the way, the truth, and the life,”—enacting that it was thenceforth to become the worship of the land, to the utter subversion of heathen idolatry. Thus Christianity was established by order of the Roman council; and the vast influence its ministers obtained,—the important consequences and the corruption which followed ecclesiastical interference in temporal affairs,—the gradual extension of power, assumed by the bishop of Rome, terminating in the yet more formidable encroachments of papal dominion,—causes the history of the Christian church to be too closely interwoven in the political occurrences of many successive ages, for it not necessarily to become incorporated in our account of Italy.

The Writer not having met with any school-book in Question and Answer which gives a sufficiently clear, connected, and comprehensive view of that country, from its remotest antiquity to the present time, has drawn up this outline, having for its object, to place before juvenile students a compendium of Italian history preparatory to their entering upon a more extensive course of information.

M. DE H.

CHOISI TERRACE, GUERNSEY,  
*March, 1840.*

AN OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY  
OF  
ANCIENT AND MODERN ROME.

---

CHAPTER I.

*From the landing of the Trojan Chief, Æneas,  
in Italy, to the building of Rome.*

Q. What is our first knowledge of Italy?

A. The history of ancient Italy is lost in obscurity, but the Palasgians, a wandering people from the mountains of Caucasus (in Asia) are conjectured to have been its first inhabitants, entering Italy from the north-east.

Q. What people beside the Palasgi were amongst the early settlers in the country?

A. The Greeks. Greece was a country of Europe the earliest peopled, and it may be supposed families spread from thence into Italy. Much of the ancient language of Italy was derived from the same origin as the Greek, tribes of Palasgians having settled in both countries.

Q. Give the ancient appellations of Italy.

A. Saturnia, Ænotria, Hesperia, Ausonia, Tyrrhenia, Græcia-Magna, and Italia.

Q. In what year did Æneas land in Italy ?

A. Eleven hundred and eighty-two years before the birth of Christ.

Q. Who was Æneas, and what occasioned his going to Italy ?

A. Æneas was a Trojan chief, the son of Anchises. When Troy, a celebrated town in Asia, was taken by the Greeks, Æneas escaped with a few followers, and, after encountering many dangers, arrived in Italy, a country to the south of Europe.

Q. How and by whom was he received ?

A. He was very kindly received by Latinus, king of the Latins, who gave him his daughter Lavinia in marriage.

Q. What occurred on the marriage of Æneas ?

A. Turnus, king of the Rutuli, to whom Lavinia was to have been married, made war against Æneas, and was slain.

Q. What became of Æneas ?

A. Having built a city called Lavinium, he made war against Mezentius, a petty king, in which he was, in his turn, defeated and killed.

Q. What became of Ascanius, his son ?

A. He removed from Lavinium, and founded the city of Alba Longa, where the descendants of Æneas reigned fourteen generations.

Q. Who was the fifteenth king, and what happened to him ?

A. Numitor: but his brother, Amulius, being very rich and ambitious, compelled him to abdicate, and usurped the throne.

Q. What became of Numitor's children?

A. His son was put to death, and his daughter, Rhea Silvia, compelled to become a vestal virgin.

Q. How many vestal virgins were there, and what had they to do?

A. They were six in number, and their office was to take care of the fire which was continually burning in the temple of Vesta, the goddess of fire, whose priestesses they were.

Q. What vow were the vestal virgins obliged to take?

A. They were bound to celibacy, or the preserving a single life: this vow Rhea Silvia broke, and declared that Mars the God of War was the Father of the children, a story likely to be believed in those days of superstition and religious ignorance.

Q. What became of Rhea Silvia?

A. She was buried alive, and her two children were cast into the Tiber.

Q. How were the twin brothers saved?

A. The river overflowing, they were saved from being drowned by the water retiring, and a wolf, having come to drink, seeing the chil-



dren, suckled and caressed them as if they were her own.

Q. What happened then?

A. Faustus, the king's shepherd, was so surprised at the sight, that he took them home and gave them to Larentia, or, as she is sometimes called, Lupina, his wife, who reared them carefully.

Q. What were the names of the twins?

A. Romulus and Remus.

Q. How were they employed while leading a shepherd's life?

A. They built their own huts, and tended their flocks like the rest, as shepherds.

Q. Did they remain long in this state?

A. No: tired of a pastoral life, they betook themselves to the chase; not content with that, they attacked and plundered the robbers, and divided the booty amongst the shepherds.

Q. Were they joined by others?

A. Yes; they were joined by so many youths as to be enabled to hold assemblies and games.

Q. What happened in one of their excursions?

A. The party were surprised—Romulus escaped; but Remus was taken prisoner, and accused by Amulius, the king, as a plunderer of Numitor's lands, to whom he was sent, that he might do himself justice,

Q. How did Amulius die?

A. Faustulus told Romulus his history, and Numitor informed Remus, upon which discovery the brothers rose up, and having beset Amulius, they slew him.

Q. What became of Numitor?

A. He ascended the throne after having been deposed forty years.

Q. What did the brothers determine?

A. Upon building a city on the spot where they had been preserved.

Q. What followed next?

A. Romulus and Remus quarrelled which should govern Rome; Remus was killed, and Romulus became king, seven hundred and fifty-two years before Christ.

Q. What was the condition of the known world at that time?

A. Italy was divided into a number of small states, very uncivilized, as was also the rest of Europe, with the exception of Greece, which was rising into renown.\* Africa was little known, excepting Egypt, which then flourished. Asia prospered, and the Israelites in Judea were governed by kings. The prophet Isaiah lived at that time, and particularly foretold the future advent or coming of Christ upon earth, and declared moreover that "the earth shall be full of

\* The olympic games, consisting of wrestling, horse and chariot racing, were revived, and ordered to be celebrated every fifth year. The Greeks reckoned time by the olympic games, as the Romans did from the building of their city, which latter occurred seven hundred and fifty-two years before Christ.

the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea." (Isaiah ii. 9.)

Q. What is there so very remarkable in this prophecy?

A. That when it was made, above seven hundred years before Christ, the whole world, except the Jews, were sunk in the grossest ignorance and Paganism, since when, according to prediction, at the appointed time Christ came upon earth, and notwithstanding the most violent opposition, Christianity has spread, and is now spreading, over all parts of the world, in the expressive language of the prophet, even "as the waters cover the sea."

Q. Now, repeat what you have been learning of the Roman annalists' account of the early state of Italy.

A. After the famous siege of Troy, (which was a town in Asia,) Æneas, a Trojan chief, arrived in Italy, and was well received; he married Lavinia, and was shortly after killed. His son, Ascanius, built Alba Longa, and then followed a long succession of kings to the time of Numitor. His grandsons, Romulus and Remus, were nursed by a wolf, which so surprised Faustulus, the king's shepherd, that he took them home and brought them up; on their becoming men, Faustulus told Romulus his history, and Numitor informed Remus; they determined to found a city, but quarrelling which should govern, Remus was killed, and Romulus founded Rome.

## CHAPTER II.

*Romulus, the first King of Rome. B. C. 752.*

Q. IN what year was Rome founded, and what size was the city?

A. It was built seven hundred and fifty-two years before Christ, and at that time it had only one thousand houses; was built nearly square, a mile round, with an insignificant territory of only eight miles.

Q. How did Romulus people it?

A. By inviting people of all descriptions, even robbers and slaves, to reside in it, which served greatly to increase his new city.

Q. What did he do next?

A. He chose a senate, which was composed of one hundred of the chief citizens most renowned in wisdom and valour, who were to govern the state in his absence, in times of war, and to give laws.

Q. What guard did he have to enforce his authority?

A. A guard of twelve men, called Lictors, who were each armed with an axe tied up in a bundle of rods.

Q. What did the common people do?

A. The common people, who were called Plebeians, sanctioned those laws in electing a king, or magistrates.

Q. What did Romulus then appoint?

A. Religion, which consisted in believing what the soothsayers and augurs said; these priests offered up sacrifice to the gods, and, on the appearances of the entrails of animals, pretended to foretell events.

Q. What was there so remarkable in the early worship of the Romans?

A. The Romans at that period did not worship idols, which was the more singular, because every nation in the world, with the exception of the Jewish, were idolaters. The worship of the gods consisted chiefly in prayers, vows, and sacrifices.

Q. What were the Romans desirous of being considered?

A. Of divine origin, as if the insignificance of Rome at its commencement could be concealed by so extravagant an assumption.

Q. What plan did Romulus adopt for procuring wives for his people?

A. He proclaimed the observance of games in honour of Neptune, the god of the sea, and the unsuspecting Sabines taking their daughters to see the sights, the Roman youth rushed in, carried them off, and married them.

Q. What followed this attack on the Sabines?

A. A war ensued, in which Tatius, king of

the Sabines, having obtained possession of one of the gates by stratagem, a battle took place, in which the wives interposed and made peace; an agreement followed, to receive one hundred Sabines into the senate, and that both kings, Tatius and Romulus, should reign jointly; but Tatius being slain five years after, Romulus became sole king.

Q. What was the end of Romulus?

A. Becoming too arrogant, he displeased the senate, and was killed, but so secretly that the people believed he was taken up to the abode of their gods, and he was accordingly worshipped as a deity under the name of Quirinus, after reigning thirty-seven years. This absurdity of worshipping men as gods after their death, who could not be endured when living, frequently occurs in the history of nations unenlightened by true religion.

---

### CHAPTER III.

*Numa Pompilius, the second King of Rome.*

Q. Who was the second king of Rome, and what was his character?

A. Numa Pompilius, a Sabine, noted for his piety and justice. He built the temple of Janus, which was to be open in the time of war and

closed in the time of peace. Numa was a wise king, and encouraged agriculture: to gain greater respect, he persuaded the people that he was secretly instructed by the goddess *Ægeria*.

Q. In what unusual way did Numa Pompilius desire to be buried?

A. In a stone coffin, with his books of ceremony.

Q. What was the most frequent and ancient mode of disposing of the dead among the Romans?

A. The Romans at first usually buried their dead in the earth, but forsaking this most ancient and most natural method, they early adopted the custom of burning from the Greeks, which is mentioned in the laws of Numa and of the Twelve Tables, but it did not become general till towards the end of the republic.

Q. How long did the practice of burning the dead continue, and when did the custom cease?

A. Under the emperors the habit of burning the dead became almost universal, but was afterwards gradually dropped upon the introduction of Christianity, so that it had fallen into disuse about the end of the fourth century.

Q. How long did Numa Pompilius reign?

A. He died after reigning thirty-nine years.

## CHAPTER IV.

*Tullus Hostilius, the third King of Rome.*

Q. WHO was the third king of Rome ?

A. Tullus Hostilius, who was too fond of war.

Q. What is there remarkable in the war with the Albans ?

A. Before the combat began, the Alban general proposed to settle their differences by single combat, which was agreed. On the Roman side were three brothers, of the same age, called Horatii, and three of the same age on the Alban called Curiatii, of equal courage : after fighting bravely, they were all killed except the one Horatii, who gained the victory ; consequently, the Albans consented to obey the Romans.

Q. What became of Tullus Hostilius ?

A. He died after a reign of thirty-two years, some say by lightning, others by treason.

---

CHAPTER V.

*Ancus Martius, the fourth King of Rome.*

Q. WHO was Ancus Martius ?

A. The grandson of the good Numa Pom-



pilius. Ancus Martius was elected king by the people, and the choice was afterwards confirmed by the senate.

Q. What did he institute ?

A. The sacred ceremonies which were to precede a declaration of war.

Q. What people did he conquer ?

A. The Latins ; he also quelled an insurrection of the Veii, and gained other conquests ; but his victories over his enemies were by no means equal to his works at home.

Q. What works ? name some of them.

A. Raising temples, fortifying the city, making a prison, and building the seaport of Ostia at the mouth of the river Tiber, thereby securing to his subjects the trade of that river, which passes through Rome.

Q. How long did Ancus Martius reign ?

A. Twenty-four years, and died after a useful reign, having enriched his subjects, and greatly beautified the city.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

*Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth King of Rome.*

Q. Who was the fifth king of Rome ?

A. Tarquinius Priscus, a bad man, who,

with his wicked wife Tanaquil, set aside the late king's sons, and succeeded in getting the sovereignty.

Q. What people made war on Rome?

A. Those restless neighbours of Rome, the Latins, who were forced to beg for peace. The Sabines also were defeated; and their bodies floating down the Tiber carried news of the victory to Rome, even before the messengers could arrive with tidings of the joyful event.

Q. What ensigns of royalty did Tarquin assume?

A. In imitation of the Lydian kings, he assumed a crown of gold, an ivory throne, a sceptre with an eagle on the top, and robes of purple.

Q. Where was the kingdom of Lydia situated?

A. To the north-west of Asia Minor, and the country received the name of Lydia, from Lydus, one of its kings.

Q. Was Tarquinius Priscus happier for this splendour and the indulgence of his vanity?

A. No; it only created him enemies, and he was murdered after a reign of thirty-eight years.

## CHAPTER VII.

*Servius Tullius, the sixth King of Rome.*

Q. Who was Servius Tullius?

A. Son-in-law of Tanaquil, who came to the crown solely at the senate's appointment, and without attempting to gain the suffrages of the people.

Q. On being appointed king, what was the chief object of his reign?

A. To increase the authority of the senate by depressing that of the people, who, not seeing into his designs, conferred upon him full power of settling the taxes as he should think proper.

Q. What regulation did he institute?

A. In order to ascertain the increase or decay of his subjects and their fortunes, he ordered that the citizens should assemble in the Campus Martius, in complete armour, and in their respective classes, once in five years, and then to give an exact account of their families and fortunes.

Q. What was every fifth year called from this time?

A. A lustrum.

Q. In what was Servius Tullius particularly unhappy?

A. In his family; he had a wicked daughter, named Tullia, and her husband, ambitious of reigning, threw the old king down the steps of his throne; and on endeavouring to escape, he was murdered at the foot of the Esquiline Hill, after a virtuous reign of forty-four years.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

*Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh and last King of Rome.*

Q. WHO succeeded Servius Tullius?

A. Lucius Tarquinius, afterwards called Superbus, or the Proud, having placed himself upon the throne by murder, was resolved to support his dignity with the same violence with which it was acquired.

Q. Conscious that he was detested, what change did he make in those about him?

A. He increased the guard about his person.

Q. What did he do to divert the attention of the people from his unlawful method of coming to the crown?

A. He kept the people constantly employed, either in war or in public works. He built the Capitol, (which was a fortified part of Rome,) the foundations of which had been laid in a former reign.

Q. What number of books did Tarquin at last keep from among those which he declared had been offered to him by the Sibyl, or prophetic woman?

A. Three out of nine; the woman is then said to have vanished. This most probably was a trick, invented by Tarquin himself to impose on the people, and to find in that Sibyl's leaves whatever the government might require.

Q. Where were the Sibylline books kept?

A. Proper persons were appointed to watch over them, and they were preserved in a stone chest, in a vault, in the newly designed building of the Capitol. The Sibylline books of the Romans were written in Greek.

Q. Against what people did Tarquin proclaim war?

A. Against the Rutuli.

Q. Bad man as Tarquin was, what circumstance most especially occasioned himself and family to be banished from Rome?

A. His son Sextus having injured Lucretia, who in consequence killed herself, her husband Collatinus, a noble Roman, resolved, assisted by Junius Brutus, to avenge her cause, and obtained a decree of the senate that Tarquin and his family should be for ever banished from Rome.

Q. How long had he reigned when he was expelled Rome?

A. Twenty-five years. Tarquin took refuge in Etruria, one of the states of Italy, and with

him ended the regal government, or the period of kings, after a continuance of two hundred and forty-five years from the building of the city.

Q. Repeat the names of the kings of Rome, and their characters?

A. Romulus, Numa Pompilius, Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, Tarquinius Priscus, Servius Tullius, Tarquinius Superbus, all good kings with the exception of the two Tarquins, who were very bad men.

Q. How many years from the building of the city, did the regal power terminate at Rome?

A. In the two hundred and forty-fourth year from the building of the city, and five hundred and eight years before the birth of Christ.

Q. Tell me the state of Europe at this time?

A. The Romans were becoming formidable to their neighbours in Italy, but had not yet made war out of their own country. In Greece the celebrated temple of Delphos was burnt, and the Greeks were preparing themselves against the Persian invasion. About this period many celebrated warriors began to live in Greece.

Q. Tell me the state of Africa?

A. Egypt was being conquered by Cambyses, king of Persia, and the rest of it was little known.

Q. What was the state of Asia about this time?

A. Judah was recovering its former glory under Ezra and Nehemiah, by whom the second temple was built; the Persian empire was increasing under Cyrus and Darius; Confucius, the Chinese philosopher, flourished in China.

Q. What country was then rising into renown, and what great city was destroyed?

A. Persia, and the great city of Babylon was taken by Darius. Belshazzar's feast is mentioned in the Bible. Belshazzar was killed, and with him ended the Babylonian or Assyrian empire, which had been founded soon after the flood, and is called the first great monarchy. The Persian or second great monarchy then began.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

*From the Banishment of Tarquin to the appointment of the first Dictator.*

Q. AFTER the banishment of Tarquin and his family from Rome, what is the next event that occurred?

A. Rome was no longer ruled by kings, but the government was changed to a commonwealth, which means, that the affairs of the state were placed in the hands of magistrates elected by the people and senate.

Q. How were the common people named to distinguish them from the nobles?

A. The common people were called plebeians; the nobles, senators or patricians.

Q. What was the first order of magistrates under the commonwealth?

A. Consuls: Brutus and Collatinus were the two first.

Q. What are the principal circumstances that happened during the beginning of the Commonwealth?

A. A party formed in favour of Tarquin, the former king, for the purpose of replacing him on the throne.

Q. How was the conspiracy discovered?

A. Vindicius, a slave, having overheard the plot, informed the senate, for which he was amply rewarded.

Q. What was there remarkable in it?

A. The sons of Brutus and the nephews of Collatinus were in the conspiracy, and Brutus, contrary to natural feeling and the entreaties of his friends and the people, condemned them to death, and saw the sentence executed.

Q. Who next assisted Tarquin in his endeavour to regain the throne?

A. The Veians; a battle ensued, in which Aruns, the son of Tarquin, and Brutus slew each other. The Romans gained the victory, and Valerius, the consul, returned in triumph to Rome.



Q. Whom did Tarquin next prevail upon to assist him?

A. Porsenna, king of Etruria, renowned for his valour and generosity, marched against Rome, and defeated the Romans.

Q. How was the city saved?

A. As the Etrurians were rushing over the bridge to attack the city, Horatius Cocles, a Roman, defended the bridge alone against five hundred of the enemy till it broke down, and then swam back to the town, where he was liberally rewarded.\*

Q. What did Porsenna do next?

A. He intended to take the city by blockade, and had already reduced it to famine, when it was again saved by an extraordinary circumstance.

Q. What was that?

A. Mutius, a brave Roman youth, dressed himself as an Etrurian peasant, entered the camp of the enemy, resolved to kill the king or die in the attempt. Porsenna, with his secretary, was paying the soldiers, when Mucius, not knowing the king, killed the secretary by mistake.

\* Both Roman and Grecian history abound with fabulous accounts of heroic deeds; still, those whom history has thus handed down existed, and were really brave men. The extravagant stories told of them being often alluded to in ancient poetry, could not be understood without a knowledge of the fictitious part of an historical truth. Thus Horatius Cocles doubtless really distinguished himself by his courage and valour, but to him, as to many other heroes of ancient history, more was ascribed than ever performed.

Q. What followed?

A. Porsenna asked him who he was, and Mucius answered, that he was a Roman; then thrusting his hand into a fire that was burning upon an altar, said, "You see how little I regard the severest punishment you can inflict upon me. A Roman knows not only how to act, but how to suffer. I am not the only one you have to fear; three hundred Roman youths have conspired your destruction; therefore, prepare for their attempts."

Q. What did Porsenna then do?

A. Being a generous enemy, he set Mucius free, and made peace with the Romans on their delivering twenty hostages of the noblest of their citizens as pledges of future peace.

Q. Was there any thing remarkable that happened?

A. Yes; Clœlia, a noble girl, one of the hostages, swam across the river, and bid her companions follow, thereby effecting their escape; but the Romans, fearing to irritate Porsenna, sent her back, upon which Porsenna generously liberated her, with permission to choose those whom she wished to accompany her return.

Q. Whom did she choose?

A. She considerably chose boys under fourteen years of age, saying they were least able to bear the fatigue of captivity.

Q. Whom did Tarquin next prevail upon to espouse his quarrel?

A. The Latins, by means of his son-in-law, Manilius.

Q. Did the people remain content under their consuls?

A. No; they refused to go to war unless their debts were remitted to them on their return, upon which a new magistrate was elected, with absolute power, styled Dictator.

---

## CHAPTER X.

*From the creation of a Dictator to the election of the Tribunes.*

Q. WHAT was the new magistrate called?

A. Dictator. Larcus was the first Dictator.

Q. Did the people obey him quietly?

A. Yes; the people were so afraid of his power, that they quietly arranged themselves under his banner. He laid down the dictatorship after six months, having exercised it with blameless integrity.

Q. But did the plebeians remain content?

A. No; they retired to Mons Sacer, three

miles from the city, under Sicinius Bellutus, to form a new establishment.

Q. What did the senators then do?

A. Being struck with terror and consternation, the senate entreated the people to return, but not succeeding, they sent Menenius Agrippa, one of the wisest and best of their senators, who, to point out the folly of their conduct, told them a celebrated fable.

Q. Relate the particulars.

A. In times of old, when every limb of the body had a will of its own, it was resolved to revolt against the stomach, which was accused of remaining idle while the limbs had to work. Accordingly, the feet refused to bear the load, the hands vowed not to feed it, and the teeth would not chew the food. Thus resolved they kept their word, but shortly found that instead of mortifying the stomach, they only distressed themselves. For, inactive as the stomach appeared, it was in reality owing to it that they had strength to work or courage to rebel. The members, convinced by experience of this plain truth, determined to revolt no longer, but returned to their several duties, and the whole body was soon restored to health.

Q. What moral is to be drawn from this fable?

A. That as the members of the body have different employments and uses, so distinct offices and conditions of people are indispensable to

the welfare of a country. All cannot govern, therefore, for the general good no less than that of the state, it is needful for some to command and others to obey.\*

Q. Did this affect the people?

A. Yes; they unanimously agreed that Agrippa should lead them back to Rome, but Lucius Junius, one of their orators and leaders, told them they ought to have officers elected to redress their grievances, as pledges of security.

Q. What were these new officers called?

A. Tribunes of the people. They were at first five in number, and afterwards five more were added.

Q. Wherein did the power of the Tribunes of the people consist?

A. The Tribunes sat at the door of the senate, and rejected a decree by saying the words, *Veto*, *I forbid*, or confirmed it by signing the latter T; after these were appointed, the people returned contented.

\* This wise old fable is known under the title of "The Belly and the Members," but as stomach is a more refined expression for little girls, I have substituted it.

## CHAPTER XI.

*From the creation of the Tribunes of the People  
to the appointment of the Decemviri.*

Q. WHAT happened during the dispute between the people and the senate?

A. Tillage and cultivation were neglected, so that a famine ensued, in which the senate helped the plebeians as much as they could; yet the people, not willing to lay the blame on themselves, accused the patricians of buying up the corn, but a fleet laden with grain arriving from Sicily restored their spirits once more.

Q. What celebrated man incurred their resentment?

A. Coriolanus, one of the bravest warriors of Rome; he was accused of concealing the plunder of Antium, for which he was condemned to perpetual banishment.

Q. Where did Coriolanus take refuge?

A. Having taken leave of his family, he took refuge with Attius Tullius, a man of great power among the Volscians, who espoused his quarrel, and found means to break the treaty and make war with Rome.

Q. Coriolanus and Tullius being made generals of the Volscians, what did they then do?

A. They laid waste the lands of the plebeians, but left untouched those of the patricians, and having taken every town, laid siege to Rome.

Q. What did the senate then determine upon doing?

A. To send an embassy to offer Coriolanus the restitution of his civic rights, if he would withdraw the army; but that not succeeding, another was sent, imploring him not to exact more from his native city than what became Romans to grant, but it was unsuccessful; so a third deputation went, composed of the pontiff, priests, and augurs, still he would not forsake the Volscians.

Q. What do you mean by civic rights?

A. The privileges of a citizen, distinct from such as were military, which were offered to be restored to Coriolanus.

Q. As a last resource, what did they decide upon doing?

A. The senate sent his mother, his wife, and his two children, and all the matrons of the city. Coriolanus, when he saw them coming, determined to refuse their request, but having embraced them, he was so overcome, that he said, "O, my mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son." A striking example of filial obedience.

Q. What became of Coriolanus?

A. Having withdrawn his army, he was soon after slain in a tumult amongst the Volscians,

as some accounts state ; but others say he lived to a great age, a miserable exile.

Q. What became of the two consuls, Manlius and Fabius ?

A. They were cited before the tribunes, to answer for delaying the Agrarian law.

Q. What was the Agrarian law ?

A. The Agrarian law was a law relating to certain lands, which the plebeians desired should be divided equally amongst them ; but the patricians, who considered the people had no right to what they claimed, refused their assent, and thus the Agrarian law was the cause of frequent dispute between the senate and the people.

Q. What worthy Roman was appointed dictator ?

A. Quintus Cincinnatus was chosen dictator, a virtuous man without ambition, and living at his farm, where the deputies of the senate found him dressed as a common husbandman, labouring in his fields. He accepted the office, but was in no way elated at the honour.

Q. Did Cincinnatus succeed in quelling the people ?

A. Yes ; partly by threats and by well-timed concession he restored order amongst the people, and having established tranquillity, retired to his farm.

Q. What became of the Volsci ?

A. They joined the Æqui, and laid waste the Roman territory. Minutius, the Roman consul, was sent against them, but being timid, he was hemmed in and surrounded by the enemy in a defile.



Q. How were the senate informed of the dangerous position of Minutius ?

A. Some knights, having passed through the camp of the enemy, arrived at Rome, and informed the senate, who decided on again making Cincinnatus dictator.

Q. What did Cincinnatus do ?

A. He ordered every Roman to attend, armed, with five days' provisions at the Campus Martius,\* and then setting out, he attacked and surrounded the Æqui in the same way they had encompassed the Roman consul.

Q. Who gained the victory ?

A. Cincinnatus. He made all the Æqui pass under the yoke; that is, pass under three spears, which were set upright, in the form of a gallows. Cincinnatus divided the booty amongst the soldiers, excepting those of the army of the consul, and would take no part of the plunder himself; a rare instance of disinterested patriotism. Cincinnatus is to be remembered for one of the noblest characters in history.

Q. Who was Sicinius Dentatus ?

A. A plebeian and renowned soldier, who excited the people by telling them that he had fought one hundred and twenty battles, gained twenty-five crowns, eighty-three chains, sixty bracelets, eighteen gilt spears, eight hundred and twenty-three horse trappings, and received forty-five wounds, all in front, and yet had

\* The place where the levies were made.

received no share in the lands which were won from the enemy, but was living in poverty and contempt.

Q. What influence had this on the people?

A. The Agrarian law was unanimously called for, but the patricians, dispersing the multitude, put it off for the present. This law was a constant subject of dispute between the plebeians and patricians; or, in other words, between the rich and the poor.

Q. What decision did both magistrates and people come to, in the hope of settling the government, and preventing such perpetual contention?

A. Incessant quarrelling must render people unhappy, whether in a family or a state, and the Romans, growing weary of their endless divisions, determined to have written laws, which should be binding on all ranks of citizens.

Q. How did they obtain the laws?

A. Two ambassadors, Sulpicius and Manlius, were sent to the Greek cities,—that is, those cities in Italy peopled by Greeks,—and also to Athens, the capital of Greece, in order to procure whatever laws they considered best adapted to ensure the welfare of Rome.

Q. Why did the Romans think of going to Greece?

A. Because Greece had long been the most learned and civilized part of the world, therefore the best able to assist them. The Roman

ambassadors, accordingly, remained a year at Athens, then returned, and after the laws had been arranged, they were known under the title of "The laws of the Twelve Tables."\*

---

## CHAPTER XII.

*From the creation of the Decemviri to the extinction of the office.—Military Tribunes appointed.—Censors.—Cincinnatus appointed Dictator.—Military Tribunes re-appointed.—Consuls again chosen.*

Q. WHAT magistrates were then chosen ?

A. It was at last agreed that there should be ten of the principal senators elected, with full power for one year, and each to administer justice for a day in turn. These new magistrates were called Decemviri.

Q. Was this mode of government found to answer ?

A. No; the decemviri liked their authority too well to resign it: disregarding both senate and people, they considered themselves supreme, and having both civil and military power, they paid little attention to the complaints of the people, and kept the city of Rome in awe.

\* This arrangement gave rise to a new order of magistrates, called Decemviri, who were originally ten patricians, selected to settle the state of the law.

Q. What added to the distress of the times?

A. The old enemies of Rome, the *Æqui* and *Volsci*, renewed their incursions within ten miles of Rome, but the Roman soldiers suffered themselves to be defeated in order to punish their generals, on whom the disgrace would fall.

Q. Tell me something of Appius and the decemviri.

A. On the old soldier, *Sicinius Dentatus*, blaming the generals for the recent defeat, Appius, under pretence of doing him honour, sent him to the army, where he was received with every mark of respect, but was soon after assassinated, at the instigation of the decemviri.

Q. But what at last put an end to the magistrates called decemviri?

A. *Claudius*, instructed by Appius, insisted that *Virginia*, the daughter of *Virginus*, a centurion, was his slave, although it was well known that she was a free woman, and therefore that he had no right to her. Appius, however, being the judge, and a wicked man, passed the unjust and cruel sentence, that she was to be given up as the slave of *Claudius*; on which the unhappy father, thinking that death was preferable to such a lot, under pretence of taking leave of her, drew *Virginia* towards a butcher's stall, seized a knife, stabbed her to the heart, and then mounting his horse rode directly to the camp.

Q. What followed this desperate act, occasioned by the mandate of an interested judge?

A. Virginius was fully avenged; the people, equally with the army, taking up his cause, the latter left their generals and encamped on Mount Aventine, near Rome. Appius and Oppius destroyed themselves in prison, the eight remaining decemviri went of their own accord into exile, and Claudius, the pretended master of Virginia, was driven into banishment. Thus the office of decemviri was abolished.

Q. What magistrates do we next read of?

A. Military tribunes. The office lasted only a few months, after which consuls were once more appointed, and persons called censors chosen to assist them.

Q. What was the office of censor?

A. The power it conferred was great. Part of their business was the numbering of the people, and taking an account of the estates, something like the doomsday book in the History of England. The two first censors were Papyrius and Sempronius. The office continued nearly one hundred years.

Q. Did the people remain pleased with the government?

A. No; they accused the consuls of neglect in not having provided a sufficient supply of corn, on which the senate resolved to create a dictator, to quell the disturbances and rescue the country from impending danger. Cincinnatus was chosen for the third time, and having succeeded, he again resigned the dictatorship.

Q. What was the next magistrate chosen ?

A. The people insisted on having the military tribunes restored ; but the office did not last, and consuls were re-appointed.

Q. What noble character do we next meet with ?

A. Camillus, who took the city of Veii, which had long been the rival of Rome, after a ten years' siege, (like a second Troy,) and its spoils enriched the conquerors.

Q. Of what stratagem did Camillus make use ?

A. He opened a passage under ground, and while the Veians were confident of security, to their amazement and consternation he filled the city with his legions. When the Greeks conquered Troy, it was by the stratagem of armed men being concealed in a wooden horse, which the Trojans imprudently admitted into the city.

Q. What reward did Camillus receive ?

A. The fickle and ungrateful people accused him of appropriating two brazen gates to his own use, and he was therefore fined one hundred denarii, but Camillus secretly retired to Ardea, a town near Rome.

Q. What barbarous people invaded Italy ?

A. The Gauls. Under their king, Brennus, they made an irruption into Italy, and after having attacked Clusium, entered Rome, massacred the senators and people, and burnt the city.

Three hundred and forty-nine years before Christ.

Q. How did the Capitol escape the general destruction?

A. The cackling of geese warned the sentinels, and Manlius particularly distinguished himself in defending it, and in saving the last remains of Rome.

Q. What became of Manlius?

A. Aspiring to the sovereign power, he was condemned to die, and was hurled from the Tarpeian rock.

Q. What was the Tarpeian rock?

A. A steep rock, down which criminals were thrown, a mode of punishment then very common.

Q. Who obliged the Gauls to retreat?

A. Camillus, arriving at the head of some troops, completely defeated the Gauls, who were driven out of Italy.

Q. What wonderful story is told of the Roman belief in the word of their priests?

A. A gulf having opened, the augurs declared that it would not close unless the most precious things in Rome were thrown in, upon which Curtius leapt into it, in full armour, saying, there was nothing so valuable as patriotism and military glory.

Q. Did the gulf close?

A. So it is said, and Curtius was seen no more.\*

Q. What similar instance of patriotism occurred in the Grecian history, about a thousand years before Christ, and long before this took place?

A. Codrus, the last king of Athens, devoted himself to death for the good of his country, it having been declared that the Heraclidæ would conquer Athens without such a sacrifice. Athens from that time became a republic, which means, a form of government in which the legislative power is derived from the people.

---

### CHAPTER XIII.

*From the Wars of the Samnites, and the War with Pyrrhus, to the beginning of the first Punic War, when the Romans first carried their aggressions out of Italy.*

Q. OVER what states of Italy had the Romans triumphed?

A. The Romans had defeated the Sabines,

\* It has been conjectured, an earthquake happening at the time might account for such a circumstance taking place; but so much fable is mixed up in the history of Rome, that judgment must be exercised in distinguishing between an historical fact and the legend attached to it.



the Etrurians, the Hernici, the Æqui, the Volscians, and the Latins. They now turned their arms against the Samnites, a people inhabiting the southern part of Italy, which forms (at the present day) part of the kingdom of Naples. The Samnites were conquered.

Q. What instance again occurs of the sternness of a father, like another Brutus, condemning his son to death?

A. In a war between the Romans and Latins, a brave Roman youth, Titus Manlius, son of the consul Manlius, having, (contrary to orders,) accepted the challenge of the Latin general, Murtius, whom he slew in single combat; his father Manlius, notwithstanding his bravery, ordered him to be beheaded for military disobedience.

Q. Who were the Roman commanders in the war with the Latins?

A. Manlius commanded the right wing and Decius the left.

Q. What is there remarkable in this war, strongly exhibiting the character of the times?

A. The great rigour of discipline in Manlius ordering his son to be put to death, and likewise the implicit belief of the Romans in whatever was decreed by the priests, displayed in Decius devoting himself to death for his country. His son Decius also, forty years after, died to save the lives of his countrymen, in a similar manner.

**Q.** What occasioned the voluntary death of Decius?

**A.** The augurs had foretold, that wherever the Roman army might be distressed, the commander of that part should devote himself for his country, and die as a sacrifice to the immortal gods.

**Q.** What part of the Roman army began to give way?

**A.** The left wing which Decius commanded, who accordingly devoted himself to death, and after receiving instructions from Manlius, he being likewise pontiff, (or chief priest,) Decius rushed furiously into the midst of the enemy, and died covered with wounds. Superstition most probably acting with as much effect as the superior military skill of the Romans, the Latins were defeated.

**Q.** The war between the Romans and Samnites having continued for many years with various success, let me hear its conclusion.

**A.** The Samnites, unable to defend themselves any longer, called in the assistance of Pyrrhus.

**Q.** Who was Pyrrhus?

**A.** The noble Pyrrhus was king of Epirus, (a country to the north of Greece,) who landed at Tarentum, in Italy, to assist the Samnites against the Romans.

**Q.** What was the first care of Pyrrhus on his arriving in the country of the Samnites?

A. Observing that the people thought more of bathing, feasting, and dancing, than preparing for war, his first care was to restrain them in such amusements as rendered soldiers unfit for battle.

Q. What was the success of the Romans?

A. The Greeks and Romans were now engaged in battle together for the first time, but Pyrrhus sending his elephants into the midst of the engagement, the sight so astonished the Romans, who had never seen such immense animals before, that they sustained a signal defeat.

Q. How did Pyrrhus generously act?

A. Not wishing to drive the Romans to extremity, he sent Cineas the orator (and pupil of the famous Demosthenes) to negotiate a peace.

Q. Was Cineas successful?

A. No; he found the Romans incapable of being seduced by bribery, or by private or public persuasion. The senate, he said, appeared a reverend assembly of demi-gods, and the city a temple for their reception.

Q. What deputation did the Romans send to Pyrrhus?

A. An embassy from Rome, concerning the ransom and exchange of prisoners, headed by the worthy and most respectable senator Fabricius.

Q. How was he received by Pyrrhus ?

A. With great kindness, but the king, wishing to try his virtue, offered him rich presents, which the Roman refused. At another time, an elephant was made to raise his trunk unexpectedly over Fabricius's head, in order to intimidate him, but without effect. Pyrrhus, pleased at finding so much virtue in one whom he considered a barbarian, granted him the only favour that he knew could make him happy.

Q. What was that ?

A. Pyrrhus released the Roman prisoners, entrusting them to Fabricius alone, upon his promise that in case the senate were determined to continue the war, he might reclaim them whenever he thought proper.

Q. How long did the war last ?

A. The senate would not listen to peace, and the war lasted with various success and intervals for six years.

Q. What upright and honourable conduct is told of Fabricius ?

A. A letter was brought to the fine old Fabricius, the Roman general, when the armies were in sight of each other, from the physician of Pyrrhus, importing, that for a proper reward, he would take the king off by poison. Fabricius felt all the honest indignation at this base proposal that was consistent with his character ; he communicated it to his colleagues, and a letter

was sent to Pyrrhus, informing him of the treacherous proposal.

Q. What did Pyrrhus exclaim on receiving the communication?

A. "Admirable Fabricius!" cried he, "it would be as easy to turn the sun from its course as thee from the path of honour." And not to be outdone in generosity, Pyrrhus sent all his prisoners to Rome without ransom, and again desired a peace.

Q. After an interval of two years, war again commenced; what was the end?

A. Pyrrhus was defeated, but finding only desperate, although noble, enemies and faithless allies, he embarked his troops and returned to his own country of Epirus, in Greece.

Q. In what war did the Romans next engage?

A. In a war with the Carthaginians, called the Punic War.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

*The first Punic War; that is, a War between Rome and Carthage.*

Q. As we are about accompanying the Romans in a war (for the first time) out of

their own country, tell me a little of the people whom they went to oppose. Where was Carthage, and by whom founded ?

A. Carthage was a city founded by the Phœnicians, who, under the conduct of their queen Dido, landed on the coast of Africa, and fixed their habitations near the spot where the town of Tunis now stands.

Q. What was the cause of queen Dido leaving her own country in Asia ?

A. To escape the avarice of Pygmalion, king of Tyre. Accompanied by her followers and ships of treasure, she reached the African coast, and demanded of the natives only as much land as the hide of an ox would encompass.

Q. Was that granted to her ?

A. Yes ; by cutting the skin into narrow strips, by that means she encircled sufficient ground to build a city, which soon became populous and flourishing. Carthage was founded about one hundred and thirty-seven years before Rome.

Q. Queen Dido appears to have been very unfortunate ; what became of her ?

A. To avoid being the wife of Jarbas, a neighbouring prince, the unhappy Dido caused a funeral pile to be erected, and with a dagger put an end to her existence.

Q. What increase of territory did Carthage

obtain besides a considerable part of the coast of Africa ?

A. The Carthaginians at one time possessed the greatest part of Spain, Sicily, and the islands of the Mediterranean sea. Their chief towns were Carthage, Utica, and Hippo.

Q. What cruel custom remained in force in Carthage for a long period ?

A. The shocking custom of offering children (in seasons of distress as many as two hundred at a time) to a god, supposed to be Saturn,\* and burning them in honour of him. The children were selected from the first families, and their mothers were obliged to assist at the sacrifice, and were applauded according to the insensibility they displayed at such unnatural barbarity.

Q. In reading profane history (as ancient pagan history is called) what truth is constantly forced on the mind ?

A. The dreadful state of the world of antiquity,—and also at the present day in those parts where the divine light of revelation has not spread,—exhibiting everywhere the superstitions and horrors insisted on by a dark despotic

\* The Greeks represented the god Saturn, or *Time*, as devouring his own children, a figurative way of expressing that *Time* is the creator and destroyer of all things. It was an allegory, or fable, but which possibly, being misunderstood, may have given rise to the cruel sacrifice of children. *Time* is also represented with wings, to show his speed; likewise with a scythe and hour glass: the first is emblematic of death; the last teaches, that as time passes so quickly, it ought not to be lost, but the part of the wise is to employ

priesthood,—is in strong contrast with the heavenly doctrine of the gospel, inculcating love, peace, and good will to man, and christian pastors, with mild humanity, enforcing the same.

Q. What was the custom of Carthage on the return of a general from an unsuccessful expedition ?

A. Even if no blame was attached to him he suffered death, and it was not uncommon to crucify a defeated general.

Q. To what cause may such cruel practices amongst the Carthaginians be in a great measure attributed ?

A. The Carthaginians being devoted to commerce, and disregarding military service, usually hired troops from Gaul, Africa, Spain and Italy, and suspicious of those whom they employed, the greatest severity was exercised to secure their fidelity.

Q. What did the military wear, to shew the number of campaigns in which they had been engaged ?

A. Every officer and soldier wore as many rings as he had served campaigns. Another custom of Carthage was, that in times of public distress the city was hung with black.

Q. By what means did Carthage rise to distinction ?

A. By successful trade, which gradually made it become a city of great commercial



importance. Carthage was considered very powerful when the Romans declared war against it.

Q. We have now digressed sufficiently, and must return to our account of the Romans. At what part of their history did I leave off?

A. After Pyrrhus, with the remnant of his army, had quitted Italy, and the Romans, freed from a foreign enemy, declared war against the Carthaginians, which is called the first Punic war.

Q. What reason did the Romans allege for commencing the war?

A. The assistance which Carthage had lately sent to the southern parts of Italy against the Romans.

Q. What was the great obstacle in the ambitious views of the Romans?

A. They had no fleet, or at least not what deserved that title; while the Carthaginians possessed the entire command of the sea, and kept all the maritime (that is, sea-port) towns under obedience.

Q. What accidental circumstance assisted the Romans in shipbuilding?

A. A Carthaginian vessel happened to be stranded, which served as a model, and by industry and perseverance the Romans constructed a fleet.

Q. Who was appointed to the command?

A. The consul Duilius, who gained the first Roman naval victory, the Carthaginians suffering great loss.

Q. What followed this naval success of the Romans ?

A. The senate sent another fleet of three hundred ships, with Manlius and Regulus, to carry the war into Africa.

Q. On the voyage, what circumstance occurred ?

A. The Romans, meeting a Carthaginian fleet, gained another complete naval victory, and captured the city of Clupea, in Africa.

Q. Whom did the senate recall ?

A. The general Manlius, in order to superintend the Sicilian war, and Regulus was directed to continue in Africa to prosecute his victories there.

Q. What did the Carthaginians (after being again defeated) do in their distress ?

A. Destitute of generals at home, the Carthaginians were obliged to send to Lacedemon, (in Greece,) offering the command of their armies to Xantippus, a general of great experience, who undertook to conduct them.

Q. The Greeks now were the only people a match for the Romans ; what was the result of the next battle ?

A. The Romans were defeated, and their general Regulus was taken prisoner.

**Q.** After other successes over the Romans, the Carthaginians desiring peace, whom did they send to Rome to negotiate it?

**A.** Regulus, the Roman general, who had been four years in captivity, went with the ambassadors to Rome, under a promise previously exacted from him, to return in case of being unsuccessful. He was even given to understand that his life depended on his success in obtaining peace.

**Q.** On arriving at the gates of Rome, how did Regulus act?

**A.** No entreaties of his friends could induce him to enter the city; he said he was a Carthaginian slave, and unfit to partake of the liberal honours of his country.

**Q.** What sublime instance of heroic virtue have you to relate?

**A.** The noble-minded Regulus, with entire forgetfulness of his own private interest, when called on for an opinion whether or not to continue the war, used his eloquence in advising the senate to pursue it, and terminated the treaty by rising to return to his bonds and confinement.

**Q.** What more have you to say of this extraordinary man?

**A.** His wife Marcia, with her children, entreated to be permitted to see him, but in vain. Regulus felt bound to his promise, and fearing lest his affections might induce him to swerve from his high notions of honour and duty, he

returned with the ambassadors to Carthage, without even trusting himself to take leave of his family or friends.

Q. How did the mean-spirited Carthaginians behave to him ?

A. Incapable of appreciating so much virtue, Regulus was put to a cruel death.

Q. War again commenced, tell me which side conquered ?

A. The Romans conquered ; one victory followed another, and Fabius Buteo and Lutatius Catulus gained such advantage over the Carthaginians at sea, that they were obliged to sue for peace.

Q. Did the Romans consent to enter into a treaty of peace ?

A. Yes ; and it was granted on the same terms as Regulus had demanded, viz. that they should pay to Rome one thousand talents of silver, and twenty-two thousand more in ten years, that the Carthaginians should quit Sicily and the islands adjacent, and all the prisoners should be delivered up ; and thus ended the first Punic war, which had lasted twenty-four years.

Q. What was the end of Xantippus, the Grecian general ?

A. On his return to Lacedæmon, the Carthaginians treacherously gave directions to the sailors to throw him overboard, consequently he was drowned.

Q. What term of reproach was applied by the Romans to the Carthaginians?

A. The Romans considered the Carthaginians so devoid of good faith, that *fides Punica* became a proverbial expression. Thus "*Punic faith*" has been used to signify deceit; and "*Punic reward*" the basest ingratitude.

Q. What was the origin of the Punic language?

A. From the few existing remains of the Punic language it appears to have been of Phœnician origin; and the written characters of the Carthaginians were composed partly of Phœnician and partly of Hebrew.

Q. In what year did the first Punic war end?

A. About two hundred and forty years before Christ.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### *The second Punic War.*

Q. WHAT remarkable occurrence happened soon after the first Punic war?

A. The temple of Janus was shut for the second time from the building of Rome.

Q. What was the state of literature and the arts at Rome at this period?

**A.** Rome having profited by the learning of the Grecians, the Romans were improving in the sciences, poetry, and the fine arts, and advanced rapidly towards becoming a great nation.

**Q.** Did the temple of Janus long remain shut?

**A.** No; the Romans made war with the Illyrians, a people to the north of Italy, whom they defeated. The Gauls also made another irruption, but were driven out of Italy by Marcellus, a famous general.

**Q.** What was the cause of the second Punic war?

**A.** The second Punic war began on the part of the Carthaginians, who besieged Saguntum, a city in Spain, in alliance with the Romans.

**Q.** Who were the great generals on each side at this time?

**A.** Hannibal and Asdrubal on the side of the Carthaginians; Marcellus, Fabius, and Flaminius, on the side of the Romans.

**Q.** What vow did Hamilcar the father of Hannibal make him take in his youth?

**A.** The Carthaginian general Hamilcar, celebrated for his successes in Spain, made his son Hannibal, when only nine years old, swear never-ending enmity and hatred to Rome.

**Q.** Were the Romans, or the Carthaginians, victorious?

**A.** The Carthaginians. Hannibal, after taking

Saguntum, crossed the Pyrenees, marched victorious through Gaul over the Alps, and defeated the Romans under the command of the consul Scipio; again also at Trebia, under the consul Sempronius; the Romans were again defeated at the lake of Thrasymene, under their consul Flaminius; and at the last engagement under the consuls Varro and Æmilius Paulus, at Cannæ, the slaughter of the Roman knights was so great, that Hannibal sent eight bushels of gold rings to Carthage.

Q. Who were next appointed consuls?

A. Fabius, who was called the Shield, and Marcellus, the Sword of Rome.

Q. What did Hannibal offer the Romans?

A. Peace, which they refused but upon condition that he should quit Italy: terms similar to those they had formerly insisted upon from Pyrrhus, and which were rejected by both.

Q. Where did Hannibal winter?

A. At Capua. This city, to the south of Italy, had long been considered as the seat of luxury, and the corrupter of all military virtue: from this time the Carthaginians sustained defeat.

Q. Who was sent to the assistance of Hannibal?

A. Asdrubal, his brother, but being caught in a defile his army was defeated, and he had his head cut off, which was thrown into Hannibal's camp.

**Q.** What did Hannibal prognosticate at this deplorable sight ?

**A.** The downfall of Carthage ; and with a sigh observed to those about him, that " Fortune seemed fatigued with granting her favours."

**Q.** What was the fate of Syracuse, a town in the island of Sicily ?

**A.** Syracuse siding with the Carthaginians, the Roman general Marcellus took the city, but not without experiencing great opposition from the machines of Archimedes, the celebrated mathematician, who taught the people to make burning engines, which destroyed the Roman fleet.

**Q.** At the time the Romans were engaged with Hannibal, what war were they likewise prosecuting ?

**A.** A war against Philip, king of Macedon, whose territory was to the north of Greece.

**Q.** What was that war called, and how did it terminate ?

**A.** It was called the Macedonian war, undertaken by the Romans to assist the Greeks against Philip, with whom peace was at last concluded.

**Q.** What Roman consul was next appointed to oppose the Carthaginians ?

**A.** Scipio Africanus, who commanded in Spain (where his father had been killed) after conquering that country, instead of returning



to Italy he crossed into Africa, wisely deeming it better to carry the war into the enemy's country.

Q. What general first opposed Scipio in Africa?

A. The Carthaginian general Hanno, who was defeated and slain.

Q. Who usurped the neighbouring country of Numidia at that time?

A. Syphax. The lawful king was Massinissa, who for protection joined the Romans against the Carthaginians, with six thousand horse.

Q. What did the terrified Carthaginians do at finding the success of Scipio?

A. Hannibal was ordered to leave Italy to assist his own country.

Q. On the return of Hannibal to Africa, and when within five days' journey of Carthage, at the town of Zama, the opposing armies engaged, with what success?

A. At the famous battle of Zama the Carthaginians were completely defeated, and by the advice of Hannibal submitted to the conditions which the Romans dictated, not as rivals, but as sovereigns.

Q. What were the terms of the peace?

A. The Carthaginians were obliged to quit Spain and all the islands in the Mediterranean; to pay ten thousand talents in fifty years; to

give hostages for the delivery of their ships and their elephants; to restore to Massinissa, the Numidian king, all the territory that had been taken from him; and not to make war in Africa, but by the permission of the Romans. Thus ended the second Punic war, which had lasted seventeen years.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### *The third Punic War, and the destruction of Carthage.*

Q. WE concluded with peace between Carthage and Rome. What became of Hannibal, the brave Carthaginian general?

A. He quitted Africa, and sought refuge at the court of Antiochus, king of Syria (a country of Asia, the western boundary of which is watered by the Mediterranean sea).

Q. How was he received?

A. At first with a sincere welcome, but he soon sunk in the Syrian's esteem, for projecting schemes which that monarch had neither genius to understand nor talents to execute.

Q. By whom was Antiochus completely defeated?

A. By the Romans, who to their disgrace insisted on Hannibal being given up to them. H-

escaped, and after wandering among many petty states, sought protection at the court of Prusias, king of Bithynia, a country near Syria.

Q. What became of Hannibal the Carthaginian general?

A. The Romans, with a vindictive spirit utterly unworthy of them, sent Æmilius, their general, to demand him of this king. Hannibal, finding he was treacherously to be given up to his ungenerous enemies, and weary of persecution, poisoned himself.

Q. The second Macedonian war having commenced, what was the result?

A. Perseus, the son of Philip, had murdered his brother Demetrius, and upon the death of his father, declared war against the Romans, but was completely defeated by the Roman general Æmilius, and graced the triumph of the conqueror.

Q. How long had peace continued between Rome and Carthage?

A. Nearly fifty years.

Q. What occasioned a renewal of the war?

A. Massinissa, the Numidian king, having made incursions into a territory, claimed by the Carthaginians, they attempted to repel the invasion; and the Romans, pretending it was an infraction of the treaty, determined in their jealousy that Carthage should be utterly demo-

lished, regardless of every entreaty and submission of the people.

Q. What became of Sophonisba the bride of the Numidian king?

A. The beautiful Sophonisba, a daughter of the Carthaginian general Asdrubal, was first married to Syphax, the usurper of the Numidian crown; her husband was conquered by the Romans, and Massinissa then fighting on the side of the Romans, took her captive to his camp and married her. This displeased Scipio, and Massinissa seeing no way for the unfortunate Sophonisba to escape falling into the hands of the Romans, sent her poison, which she drank off and died.

Q. What became of her former husband Syphax?

A. Syphax was sent prisoner to Rome, and died soon after. The Roman senate confirmed the sovereignty of Numidia to Massinissa, which the Roman general Scipio had presented him on the death of Sophonisba.

Q. What may be observed regarding the conduct of the Romans?

A. That as the Romans increased in power, they declined in virtue.

Q. What did the wretched Carthaginians do on learning the cruel order of the Romans?

A. Finding their destruction inevitable, they resolved to fight to the last. The vessels of

gold and silver were converted into arms; the women even cut off their hair for bow-strings; and Asdrubal,\* who had lately been condemned for opposing the Romans, was now taken from prison to head their army.

Q. What general commanded the Romans?

A. Scipio Æmilianus, the adopted son of Africanus. Several engagements were fought before the walls, with disadvantage to the Romans, who, instead of obtaining an easy conquest as they expected, began to be quite dispirited at such determined resistance.

Q. But who treacherously went over to the Romans?

A. Pharnæas, the master of the Carthaginian horse.

Q. What followed the defection of Pharnæas, or Farnæas?

A. The destruction of Carthage, which was soon by its merciless conquerors reduced to ashes, and a total ruin; many of the miserable inhabitants preferring to perish in the flames rather than fall into the hands of the Romans.

Q. On what occasion was Africanus added to the name of Scipio?

\* Young people should take particular notice of the frequent recurrence of *different persons of the same name*; and to prevent being confused, should impress on their minds some historical fact which they could with certainty distinguish one from the other.

A. After Carthage had been destroyed, Africa was reduced to a Roman province, and a prætor was sent annually from Rome to govern it. To commemorate the conquest of that country, the name of Africanus was given to Scipio. That renowned general was not long after found dead in his bed, and the suspicion was, that he had been murdered.

Q. What other city in the same year was also destroyed by the Romans?

A. Corinth, one of the noblest cities of Greece, was likewise levelled to the ground.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

### *At Rome, the Sedition of the Gracchi.*

Q. Who was Tiberius Gracchus?

A. A virtuous but ambitious man; he was one of the tribunes who tried to reform the morals of the senate by decreasing their luxury and avarice. He and his brother Caius were called the Gracchi.

Q. Who was the mother of the Gracchi?

A. The famed Cornelia, daughter of the great Scipio Africanus.

Q. What did Tiberius Gracchus do?

A. He renewed the Licinian law, which was to prevent any person having more than five hundred acres of land.

Q. Who bequeathed his kingdom and riches to the Roman people?

A. Attalus, king of Pergamus, a country in Asia.

Q. What proved the ruin of Tiberius Gracchus?

A. He proposed that as Attalus had made the Roman people his heirs, that the poor should be benefited as well as the rich, but this displeasing the senate, a tumult took place, in which he was killed.

Q. Whom did the Gracchi appoint to examine what land each person possessed?

A. Three officers, called triumviri.

Q. What became of his brother, the worthy Caius Gracchus?

A. After having successfully filled the offices of quæstor and tribune, he became very obnoxious to the senate on account of his popularity; the fickle people deserted him, and a reward of the weight of his head in gold was offered by the senators.

Q. What death did Caius Gracchus meet with?

A. Seeing there was no escape he desired his slave to kill him, which the slave immediately did, and afterwards killed himself.

Q. What was the state of the senate then?

A. They were given up to luxury and vice, only seeking for a leader that they might invest him with uncontrollable power, in the hope of benefiting themselves.

Q. How did the Romans take their meals?

A. The Romans at first sat at meals, as did also the Greeks;\* Homer's heroes sat on different seats around the wall, with a small table before each, on which the meat and drink were set.

Q. When was the custom of reclining on couches introduced at Rome?

A. The custom of reclining on couches was introduced from the nations of the East, and at first was only adopted by the men, but afterwards allowed also to the women. It was used in Africa at the time of Scipio Africanus the elder, and afterwards indulged in by the Romans.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*The Jugurthine War. The Mithridatic War,  
and the Dictatorship of Sylla.*

Q. WHO was Jugurtha?

A. King of Numidia, and grandson to

\* Homer was a Grecian poet, who wrote the "Iliad," which gives an account of the siege of Troy, and the "Odyssey," which narrates the perils and adventures of Ulysses.



**Massinissa, who had sided with the Romans against Hannibal in the second Punic war.**

**Q. Had Jugurtha a right to the throne?**

**A. No;** but being educated with the two princes, the rightful heirs, he found an opportunity of murdering Hiempsal the elder, and would have killed Adherbal also, but he escaped and fled to Rome for succour.

**Q. How did Jugurtha act?**

**A. Knowing the avarice and injustice of the senate, Jugurtha sent ambassadors with large presents to Rome, who by bribery managed to prevail on the senate to divide the kingdom between himself and Adherbal.**

**Q. Did this satisfy the wicked and ambitious Jugurtha?**

**A. No;** on his return to Africa, he determined to possess the whole kingdom, and treacherously murdered the unfortunate Adherbal.

**Q. Did the Romans continue to support Jugurtha?**

**A. No;** the Roman people had some sense of justice left, and declared war against Jugurtha.

**Q. Who was sent against him?**

**A. The Roman general Aulus; his army, being caught in a defile, were defeated and obliged to pass under the yoke; upon which Scipio, an experienced Roman general, was sent to succeed him, but when on the point**

of gaining a victory, he was superseded by the intrigues of his lieutenant, Caius Marius.

Q. Who was Marius ?

A. A Roman, born of low parents, brave but ambitious; having gained the consulship, he attacked and defeated Jugurtha in several battles, and led him prisoner to Rome, where he was starved to death, and thus ended the Jugurthine war.

Q. What now occasioned most of the Italian states to make war against Rome ?

A. Various cities of Italy rising into importance, were desirous that the senate would confer on them the freedom of Rome, which being refused, they resolved to obtain by force what was refused as a favour.

Q. What did this civil dissension give rise to ?

A. The *social war*, in which most of the states of Italy entered into a confederacy against Rome, in order to obtain a redress of their grievances.

Q. After a warfare of two years, what concessions did the senate make ?

A. They gave the freedom of the city to such of the Italian states as had not revolted, and offered it to such as would lay down their arms; thus peace was restored.

Q. Against whom did the senate next make war ?

A. Against Mithridates, the most powerful and warlike monarch of the East.

Q. Who wished to command the Roman forces ?

A. Marius being desirous of the command, a quarrel ensued between him and Sylla, which ended in Marius being put in prison. A slave was then sent to kill him, but wanting resolution to do so from being overawed by Marius, the governor considered it an omen in Marius' favour, and sent him on board a ship about to quit Italy.

Q. What became of Marius ?

A. Sylla being absent, pursuing the war against Mithridates, Marius returned to Rome, gratifying his hateful passions of revenge and ambition, and sparing no one who had displeased him ; he died a month after, not without suspicion of having hastened his end.

Q. What became of his rival Sylla ?

A. After obliging Mithridates to make peace, (which ended the Mithridatic war,) Sylla returned to Rome, when, defeating all who opposed him, and committing unheard-of cruelties, he suddenly (of his own accord) gave up the dictatorship. He then retired into the country, where he gave himself up to dissipation, and soon after died of a dreadful disease.

Q. What was the state of Rome at this time ?

A. Brilliant in foreign conquest, but wretched in its government at home.

## CHAPTER XIX.

*The jealousy of Pompey and Crassus. Cataline's Conspiracy defeated. Julius Cæsar returns from Spain.*

Q. WHAT two powerful men at Rome do we next find in rivalry?

A. Pompey and Crassus. Pompey was the most beloved general, and Crassus was the richest man.

Q. How did they endeavour to supplant each other in the eyes of the people?

A. Crassus entertained the populace at a thousand tables, and distributed corn to the poor; while Pompey tried to gain favour by restoring to the tribunes all their former privileges.

Q. What was the real object of this seeming earnestness in the people's cause?

A. To gain power; the one by making a display of liberality, and the other by affecting a love of freedom; but ambition and self-interest was the private aim of both.

Q. While Pompey was absent engaged in another war with Mithridates, what conspiracy took place at Rome?

A. A dangerous conspiracy was carried on

by Sergius Catiline, a worthless character, to seize Rome and usurp the government.

Q. Who discovered the danger?

A. The great orator and worthy consul Cicero, who, taking proper measures, seized the principal conspirators, and they were strangled in prison. Catiline endeavoured to escape into Gaul, but was destroyed with his whole army.

Q. Was Pompey successful in the East?

A. Pompey now returned to Rome, no less triumphant in conquering the East, than he had been fortunate in Africa and Europe.

Q. What became of the great Mithridates?

A. Being defeated after vainly opposing the Romans for twenty-five years, Mithridates passed into Germany and Gaul, where he took poison, but it not taking effect, he was killed by a Gaulish soldier.

Q. On the return of Pompey from conquering the East, what surname was given him on account of his many victories?

A. The surname of *Great*. Next to Pompey, Crassus possessed most authority in the state, but they were too jealous of each other to agree.

Q. Who reconciled them?

A. Julius Cæsar (nephew to Marius) had lately returned from being prætor in Spain, and

he thought that reconciling the rivals would promote his own interest.

Q. In what way did Cæsar convert the jealousy of Pompey and Crassus to forward his own advancement?

A. By flattery and promises he gained the confidence and protection of Pompey. He then applied to Crassus, who was disposed even still more to become his friend; and finding them not averse to an union of interests, Cæsar had art enough to make them forget former animosities, and to include himself in the mutual agreement that nothing should be done in the commonwealth but what received the entire concurrence and approbation of the three. This was called the first triumvirate.

---

We shall now digress to make a few observations on the habits and manners of the Romans, from the beginning of Rome to the end of the commonwealth.

Q. What were the manners of the Romans under the kings and during the early ages of the commonwealth?

A. During the early ages of Rome a virtuous but rigid severity was observed, both under the kings and at the beginning of the commonwealth.

Q. How did Romulus divide the territory of Rome?

A. The Roman territory was then very small, and Romulus divided it into three unequal portions. One part was allotted for the service of religion and for building temples; another for the king's revenue and the uses of the state; and the third and largest portion was again subdivided amongst a large number of people.

Q. What is to be admired in the Romans in the beginning of their history, as concerns religion?

A. No act of religious worship was performed without prayer.

Q. What singular notion had they concerning the gods, for although in the beginning the Romans had no idols, they believed, like all Pagans, in a number of deities?

A. That in the day-time the gods for the most part remained in heaven, but that at night they went up and down the earth to observe the actions of men.

Q. Were the Romans a religious people?

A. According to their ideas of religion, but having no knowledge of the truth, as might be expected, they were very superstitious, believing in lucky and unlucky days, dreams, ceremonies, signs and omens.

Q. How did the Romans pray?

A. Usually with the head covered and looking towards the east.

**Q.** What were their priests called, and what was their office?

**A.** The priests were called augurs and sooth-sayers, and pretended to tell future events by the appearance of the entrails of the animals they killed in sacrifice. The chief priest was called Pontifex Maximus.

**Q.** What were the young Romans taught?

**A.** To fear the gods, honour and obey their parents, and by morals and discipline to become good soldiers and citizens. This was most observed at the early part of the commonwealth.

**Q.** What was much attended to in the education of youth?

**A.** Rhetoric, or elocution; that is, a correct and elegant manner of speaking, it leading generally to the highest honours of the state; and Plutarch, a Roman writer, informs us, among the sports of the children of Rome one was that of pleading causes before a mock tribunal, when a prisoner was accused and defended, condemned or acquitted, as if in a court of law; a play well calculated to improve them in speaking, as well as to exercise their judgment.

**Q.** What is told of the Roman matrons?

**A.** That they not only nursed their children themselves, and taught their daughters useful household occupation, but even instructed their sons in the rudiments of learning.



Q. What method was employed in the early ages of the commonwealth for a law to become known ?

A. When a law had passed, it was engraven on brass and carried to the treasury, and a copy on metal was also fixed up in a public place, where it might easily be read.

Q. What loss did the Romans meet with in regard to their early records ?

A. Roman writers mention the serious loss of the records and monuments of their early history, when Rome was burnt by the Gauls, nearly four hundred years before Christ, which may account for much fable having been introduced to supply the place of facts.

Q. What difference is there in the Roman character at the beginning of the commonwealth with what it was towards the end ?

A. In the commencement of the commonwealth the private life of the citizens was frugal, temperate, and laborious ; but the Roman character became at last spoilt by successful warfare, which introduced riches and luxury, so that during the last ages of the republic the Romans were an altered people.

Q. In what manner were they altered ?

A. Instead of the virtuous and simple habits for which they had been renowned, they became corrupt by pleasure, and gave themselves up to avarice and ambition.

**Q.** What had Rome become at the end of the commonwealth?

**A.** The fourth great monarchy : the once famous Greece having been conquered, was under subjection to the Romans, who were masters also of great part of Asia and Africa, and so vast were their power and conquests, as to be often styled masters of the world.

**Q.** What was the state of philosophy and the fine arts during the early ages of the republic?

**A.** The Romans in the early ages of the republic were too constantly engaged in war to have much leisure for either the arts or sciences, which were neglected; indeed, until after the Punic wars the Romans were rude and illiterate, but, like most nations, they had an idea of poetry. Moreover, so much jealousy was entertained towards strangers, that in the first instance the Greek philosophers were banished from Rome.

**Q.** Did this contented ignorance continue?

**A.** No : an Athenian embassy arriving soon after, Greek philosophy was publicly taught, and the Romans advanced in knowledge. Towards the end of the commonwealth Rome abounded in celebrated writers.

**Q.** What Greek philosophy tended to corrupt the morals of the people towards the end of the commonwealth?

**A.** The Epicurean, so called from Epicurus, a Greek philosopher, who, although he set a

good example in his own life, yet by his doctrine he lowered the morals of the people, making them too fond of pleasure, and of indulging to excess in eating and drinking.

Q. Were not the Romans at all times very fond of war ?

A. Yes ; the Romans were a nation of warriors ; every citizen was obliged to enlist as a soldier whenever the public service required his so doing.

Q. What were the favourite amusements of the Romans ?

A. Chariot and horse-racing ; also boxing, wrestling, and throwing the discus or quoit.

Q. In what curious fashion did the Roman ladies sometimes have their hair dressed ?

A. In the form of a helmet, and false hair was worn when required.

Q. When was a Roman youth invested with the manly gown ?

A. At the age of seventeen a young man was invested with the manly gown, called a toga, which was put on with much ceremony.

Q. What was the particular employment of the women ?

A. The mistress of the family, with her maid-servants, wrought at spinning and weaving ; the young women, also, were early taught every useful household occupation ; they spun cloth for the family, and their domestic habits made them

good wives and mothers. But towards the end of the commonwealth, they left such employment to their slaves; giving themselves up to folly, vanity, and dress.

Q. What great orator mentions an honourable exception?

A. Cicero, the celebrated orator, relates that one day a Roman lady called on Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, and after displaying her jewels, requested to be shewn hers also; Cornelia, however, waited until her sons returned from school, and then presented them, saying, "These are my treasures."

---

## CHAPTER XX.

### *The first Triumvirate—Crassus, Pompey, and Cæsar.*

Q. WHAT was the last change of government we noticed in the history of Rome?

A. Cæsar being associated with Pompey and Crassus, they agreed that no public measure should take place without their mutual concurrence. The league of these three ambitious men is called the first triumvirate.

Q. What did the triumvirate then do?

A. They shared the foreign provinces amongst

themselves. Pompey chose Spain, Crassus preferred Syria, and Cæsar, Gaul. The two last generals soon after went to their governments, but Pompey remained at Rome.

Q. What became of Crassus ?

A. He was defeated and killed by the Parthian monarch Orodes, who ordered molten gold to be poured down his throat, a punishment for his avarice and love of money. Pompey and Cæsar were now alone at the head of the state.

Q. What victories had Cæsar gained ?

A. He had conquered the Helvetii, the Gauls, the Germans, the Belgæ, the Nervians, and the brave but barbarous Britons, whose priests were called druids.

Q. While Pompey was amusing himself at Rome, how did he like to hear of his rival's fame ?

A. Not at all, and with unworthy jealousy did all in his power to diminish Cæsar's reputation, but without success.

Q. What occasioned the civil war between Pompey and Cæsar ?

A. Pompey induced the senate to make proposals to Cæsar, with which that commander would not comply, and Cæsar, after several attempts, finding an accommodation fruitless, passed the Alps, and stopped at Ravenna ; then once more wrote to the consuls, saying, he was ready to resign all command, in case Pompey would do so too.

Q. What was the reply of the senate?

A. That Cæsar should lay down his government and disband his forces within a given time; and if he refused obedience, that he should be declared an enemy to the commonwealth.

Q. How did Cæsar act on learning this decree of the senate?

A. Knowing the strength of his troops, he was resolved to resist, and saying, "The die is cast," he crossed the Rubicon, a little river which separates Italy from Gaul, and which terminated the limits of his command.

Q. What had the Romans been taught to consider this river?

A. As the sacred boundary of their domestic empire. Cæsar's crossing it with troops was therefore an act of open rebellion. Thus commenced the civil war, and the senate appointed Pompey to oppose him.

Q. What success had Cæsar?

A. The greatest; and Pompey, too late, repented having assisted Cæsar in reaching his present power. Pompey's friends also reminded him of their neglected advice. Obligated to retreat, he was at length driven out of Italy by Cæsar.

Q. What followed this advantage of Cæsar over his rival?

A. After conquering Pompey's generals in Spain, Cæsar carried the war into Greece,

where Pompey was busied in making great preparations to receive him.

Q. What two great characters were in Pompey's camp aiding him to resist Cæsar?

A. Cicero and Cato.

Q. How did the war terminate?

A. The armies of Pompey and Cæsar met in Thessaly, on the plains of Pharsalia, (a country of Greece,) and after a hard-fought battle, Pompey was completely defeated and obliged to take flight.

Q. What was the end of Pompey?

A. He got on board a small fishing vessel and steered to the island of Lesbos, for his wife Cornelia and his son, whom he had left there, removed from the perils of war. They then sailed for Egypt, Pompey intending to apply to Ptolemy, the king, to whose father he had been a great benefactor, for protection; but he had no sooner landed in Egypt than he was treacherously murdered.

Q. In Catiline and Sylla we saw ambition united with vice; what have you to say of Julius Cæsar?

A. In him ambition was united with virtue; throughout the war, he won the hearts of the people by his moderation, generosity, and clemency.

Q. When one of the murderers of Pompey

presented the head embalmed to Cæsar, how was it received ?

A. Cæsar, shocked, shed tears of pity at the sadness of his end ; ordered it to be burned with the most costly perfumes, and placed the ashes in a temple, dedicated to the goddess Nemesis, the avenger of cruel and inhuman deeds.

Q. What became of Cornelia, the wife of Pompey ?

A. After witnessing the murder of her husband from the vessel, the winds favouring her, she escaped. Pompey's faithful freedman, Philip, assisted by a Roman soldier, performed the funeral and sacred rite of burning the body. According to Plutarch, the ashes were carefully collected and carried to Cornelia, who deposited them at his villa, near Alba, in Italy.

Q. Notwithstanding Pompey was murdered by the Egyptians, they are said to have erected a monument to him. What was the inscription ?

A. "How poor a tomb covers the man who once had temples erected to his honour."

Q. What form of government at Rome expired with Pompey ?

A. The commonwealth, for from that time the senate lost its power, and Rome was never without a master.

Q. Where was Cæsar when he received the news of Pompey's death ?



A. In Egypt; whither he had followed him. But Pompey's death leaving him no longer a rival to encounter, Cæsar declared that being Roman consul, it was his duty to settle the crown of Egypt, which had two pretenders.

Q. In whose favour did he decree the Egyptian crown?

A. In favour of the beautiful Cleopatra, and her youngest brother. Cæsar's delay in Egypt creating discontent, he advanced into Asia Minor, and attacked Pharnaces, king of Bosphorus, who was killed. This conquest he made with so much ease, that in writing to a friend at Rome, he expressed the rapidity of his victory in these words: "Veni, vidi, vici;" that is, I came, I saw, I conquered. He then returned to Italy.

Q. Meanwhile what colleague governed for him at Rome?

A. Mark Antony, who had filled the city with riot; but the moderation and humanity of Cæsar soon restored tranquillity.

Q. On Cæsar returning to Africa, whom did he defeat?

A. Pompey's party, still determined to oppose him, had found time to rally under Scipio and Cato, assisted by Juba, king of Mauritania. Scipio was defeated; Juba, and Petreius, his general, killed each other in despair; and Cato, the famed lover of republican liberty and virtue, stabbed himself. Thus ended the war

in Africa, and Cæsar returned to Rome in great triumph.

Q. How many days did the celebration of his magnificent triumphs last?

A. Four days: the first was for Gaul; the second for Egypt; the third for his victories in Asia; and the fourth for that over Juba, in Africa.

Q. Besides the usual recreations, what other spectacle did Cæsar exhibit at Rome?

A. That of gladiators.

Q. What were the gladiators?

A. Men who fought in public, either for hire, or by compulsion; and thousands lost their lives in this cruel manner, killing each other for the amusement of the spectators.

Q. Who introduced gladiators in Rome?

A. The first exhibition was by two brothers, called Brutii, at the funeral of their father; but Julius and Augustus Cæsar encouraged this shocking spectacle, making it a Roman game. Even women used to be present.

Q. Up to what time did this sinful waste of life continue?

A. From Julius Cæsar to the reign of Constantine, who shewed the first blessed fruits of Christianity, by forbidding such an inhuman practice; but the custom was not altogether suppressed till the reign of Theodoret, king of the Ostrogoths in Italy, about five hundred years after Christ.

**Q.** Had the ancient Romans any such cruel practices ?

**A.** No ; but, like the ancient Trojans and Greeks, they slew the captives taken in battle, to appease the manes (*i. e.* shades or spirits) of the departed fallen on the side of the victors : this was considered an act of religion.

**Q.** What difference do you perceive between the cruel custom of slaughtering captives, and that of the fighting of gladiators ?

**A.** The slaughter of victims at the tombs of deceased warriors was a religious sacrifice, and although a cruel custom, the motive is to be respected ; whereas the fights of gladiators being only for amusement, it indicated a depraved and savage feeling in a people who could delight in such scenes of bloodshed.

**Q.** What is the meaning of sacrifice, and when was it instituted ?

**A.** Sacrifice is the most ancient form of religious service, and means an offering up to God, and an outward sign, to keep up a spiritual meaning. Sacrifice was appointed on Adam falling from a state of innocence, to preserve in remembrance that a Redeemer should come upon earth ; but to cease so soon as Christ, that great Sacrifice for the sins of mankind, had appeared ; consequently, sacrifices have ceased wherever the Christian religion is known.

**Q.** But do you not sometimes hear of Christian sacrifice ? What does that mean ?

A. Christian sacrifice means the sacrificing or giving up whatever is wrong, from a principle of duty ; and endeavouring to obey the precepts of the gospel, although the doing so might be contrary to the inclination.

Q. Did mankind remember the true use and end of sacrifice ?

A. No ; the word of God and his will concerning sacrifice was kept up only amongst the Israelites ; for idolatry spreading over the world, the fear of the one true God was very soon lost, and, in the stead, an endless number of gods and goddesses were believed in, endowed with all the virtues and vices of man ; to whom sacrifices, even of human beings, were offered.

Q. What great difference was there between the Jews and Pagans on this subject ?

A. The divine law, which the Jews were enjoined to follow, led to virtue ; the corrupt notions of Paganism, as evinced in Heathen mythology, led to cruelty and vice.—The Jews sacrificed animals only ; the Pagans, besides animals, sacrificed human beings, and even children, to their idols, without pity or remorse.

Q. What book did Cæsar write ?

A. An account of his campaigns in Gaul, known under the title of Cæsar's Commentaries ; he also newly adjusted the calendar.

Q. How did Cæsar shew his policy and knowledge of human nature ?

A. By amusing the people, who, content to resign their liberty for pleasure, gave him the title of Emperor and Father of his country ; his person was declared sacred ; and, in short, upon him alone were conferred all the great dignities of the state.

Q. How did Cæsar conduct himself, now that he had risen to the highest pinnacle of power ?

A. Admirably ; he began by repressing vice and encouraging virtue, and established many useful laws ; adorned the city with numerous public buildings, and greatly benefited his country ; he likewise ordered Corinth and Carthage to be rebuilt.

Q. What obliged him to leave Rome and pass into Spain ?

A. To oppose an army raised by Pompey's sons against him, which he defeated.

Q. What became of the sons of Pompey ?

A. Cneius Pompey was killed, but his brother Sextus escaped, and afterwards became a noted pirate. A pirate is a robber at sea, and robbery at sea is called piracy.

Q. On Cæsar's return to Rome, and when his wealth, splendour, and power were at its full, what happened ?

A. Secret enemies, through envy, rumoured that he wished to make himself king ; and though both the senate and people had con-

ferred on him the most despotic power, which he used with great moderation and judgment, yet both were alike jealous at his having the title of sovereign, and a deep-laid conspiracy was formed against him.

Q. What fine reply did Cæsar make when told of the jealousies of many who envied him?

A. "That he had rather die once by treason than live continually in the apprehension of it."

Q. Who headed the conspiracy?

A. Brutus, whose life Cæsar had spared at the battle of Pharsalia, and Cassius, whom Cæsar had also pardoned. No less than sixty of the senators were likewise concerned.

Q. Had Cæsar intimation of this conspiracy?

A. Yes; but despising every warning, he went to the senate-house, where he was treacherously stabbed by those whom he had thought to disarm by his benefits, and exclaiming, "Et tu Brute," died, covered with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue.

Q. What have you to say concerning this great man?

A. Although his fault was ambition, yet it was accompanied with so many virtues, that he claims our admiration and esteem. Thus ended the first triumvirate, the three members of which came to a violent death. A moral lesson to the lovers of undue power and wealth of every country, and a tale to remind the young of the

uncertainty of human grandeur, and the wisdom of not relying too securely on any earthly possession or enjoyment.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

*The second Triumvirate. Antony, Lepidus, and Octavius, afterwards called Augustus Cæsar.*

Q. AFTER the murder of Cæsar, whither did the conspirators retire ?

A. They retired to the Capitol, and guarded its accesses by a body of gladiators, which Brutus had in pay.

Q. What was the boast of Brutus, and what difference was there between his conduct and that of the Brutus of old ?

A. He boasted of being a descendant of that Brutus who figured at the beginning of the Roman commonwealth. But the slayer of Cæsar must be viewed in a very different light from his ancestor the Brutus of old, who, although he ordered his sons to be put to death, did so in his official capacity as judge, stern, to barbarism, as the act was.

Q. Point out also another difference, which denotes virtue in the first Brutus, but brands the last with crime.

A. Tarquin's conduct, and that of his son Sextus, was most reprehensible; yet we find the first Brutus merely assisted to banish Tarquin and his family: Cæsar's conduct was, in many respects, commendable; but the second Brutus slew the man who had spared his life. Unhappily when the passions of men are engaged, they too often fancy themselves patriotic, whilst in reality they are aiming at power, equally with those they censure, only under a different form and name.

Q. How did Antony, who was consul for that year, act?

A. He and Lepidus (a man fond of commotion) thought it a good opportunity for indulging their own ambitious views.

Q. When the senate were convened, what difficult questions had they to decide?

A. Whether Cæsar had been a legal magistrate, or a tyrannical usurper; and whether those who killed him merited rewards or punishments.

Q. What measure did the senate resolve on at last?

A. To reconcile extremes, the questions being too full of difficulty to determine on, they approved of all the acts of Cæsar, and yet granted a pardon to the conspirators.



**Q.** Who excited the people against the conspirators, notwithstanding this pardon?

**A.** Antony, displeased at the decision of the senate, inflamed the minds of the people to such a degree, that the conspirators thought it safest to retire from the city, and, quitting Italy, they went into Greece, and succeeded in raising an army to defend themselves.

**Q.** By whom was Antony's power unexpectedly opposed?

**A.** By Octavius Cæsar, (grand nephew to Julius Cæsar,) but Antony and Lepidus, finding it their interest to conciliate, agreed to join him with themselves in the government, and this union is called the second triumvirate.

**Q.** What base act did these unworthy men commit to gratify their revenge and jealousy?

**A.** They agreed that each should consent to the destruction of those who might be obnoxious to either of them. Thus Lepidus gave up his brother Paulus, Antony his uncle Lucius, and Octavius gave up the orator and statesman Cicero, who was assassinated shortly after by Antony's command.

**Q.** How did the triumvirate divide the foreign possessions of Rome?

**A.** Antony chose Gaul; Lepidus, Spain; and Octavius (afterwards called Augustus Cæsar), Africa and the Mediterranean islands.

**Q.** The triumvirate resolving to revenge the

death of Cæsar, who went to attack the conspirators?

A. Antony and Cæsar went with an army into Greece, where the two principal conspirators, Brutus and Cassius, sustained a complete defeat at the battle of Philippi, celebrated by that event in Greece.

Q. What became of Brutus and Cassius after their defeat at Philippi?

A. They killed themselves.

Q. What two noted persons were slain in the battle of Philippi?

A. The son of Cato and the brother of Cassius died fighting. It has been observed, that of all who had a hand in the death of Cæsar, not one died a natural death.

Q. What became of the wife of Brutus?

A. Porcia, the wife of Brutus, and the daughter of Cato, following the example of her husband and father, killed herself.

Q. What extraordinary death is Porcia said to have adopted?

A. That of destroying herself by swallowing burning coals.\*

Q. The power of the triumvirate being established, what became of them?

A. Lepidus, incurring the displeasure of Octavius Cæsar, by attempting to add Sicily to

\* More likely killed herself from the suffocating effects of burning charcoal.

his province, was deprived of all his power, and banished to Circaëum, a town in Italy.

Q. What became of Antony, who held the government of the East ?

A. Regardless of the business of the state, he seemed only alive to pleasure, disposing of kingdoms as suited his vanity, and had the folly to write an account of his proceedings to Rome.

Q. What king did Antony settle in Judea ?

A. Herod the Great was made king of Judea, a country in Asia.

Q. But what noted queen did Antony most especially favour ?

A. Cleopatra, queen of Egypt, in Africa, celebrated for her beauty, ambition, and extravagance, and who, by making Antony forget every sense of duty, was the chief cause of his misfortunes.

Q. To whom was Antony married ?

A. Fulvia was his first wife, who, jealous of Antony's regard for Cleopatra, with the assistance of Lucius, her brother-in-law, sowed dissension between Antony and Augustus. A civil war ensued, and Lucius was defeated, but Augustus generously pardoned him.

Q. How did Antony act on hearing of his brother-in-law's defeat ?

A. He resolved to oppose Augustus, but his wife dying, a reconciliation took place.

Q. Whom did Antony next marry ?

A. Octavia, the sister of Augustus, but neglecting her as he had done his first wife Fulvia, for Cleopatra, Augustus declared war against him, being glad of the opportunity, as Antony remained the only obstacle to his ambition.

Q. Where did the great decisive naval engagement take place between Antony and Cæsar ?

A. Near Actium, a city of Epirus, in Greece, at the entrance of the gulf of Ambracia. Antony and Cleopatra were defeated.

Q. What became of these two foolish people, who, living a life of idle dissipation, died little regretted and unesteemed ?

A. Soon after the defeat at Actium, Antony hearing it reported that Cleopatra was dead, killed himself, and Cleopatra, taken prisoner by the Romans, hearing that she was to be carried to Rome to grace the triumph of Augustus, poisoned herself by applying an asp to her person, (the bite of which reptile causes death) to prevent being so disgraced.

Q. What do you mean by gracing the triumph of the conqueror ?

A. It had long been a custom to award honours to those who had been successful in battle, who made a triumphal entry into Rome, sometimes under arches erected for the occasion, riding in a

ear, the conquered princes or kings following in their train, with the spoils of the vanquished.

Q. How was the destruction of the commonwealth brought about ?

A. By the decline of virtue both in the state and people, which favoured the ambition of those who formed the first and second triumvirate, and in the end the senate conferred the title of emperor on Octavius, afterwards called Augustus Cæsar, who thus terminated the commonwealth, and became first emperor of Rome.

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

*The Twelve Cæsars. Octavius, henceforth called Augustus Cæsar, first Emperor of Rome, to the reign of the Emperor Domitian.*

Q. WHAT was the empire of Rome on the accession of Augustus Cæsar to the throne ?

A. The fourth great monarchy, and the last so called, for since then many great nations have arisen, but no single one that possessed so much power over the known world.

Q. What countries at that time formed the Roman empire ?

A. In Europe its possessions were Italy, Gaul, Spain, Greece, Illyricum, Dacia, Pannonia, Britain, and some parts of Germany; in Asia, all the provinces known by the name of Asia Minor, together with Armenia, Syria, Judea, Mesopotamia, and Media; and in Africa, Egypt, Numidia, Mauritania, and Libya.

Q. What very favourable change took place in the character of Augustus?

A. Much as he must be censured for his previous life, yet when once invested with supreme command, he governed with equal wisdom, ability, and clemency; and although he had gained the kingdom by his army, he resolved to rule it by the senate, and studied the welfare of his people.

Q. What great convenience did Augustus introduce to the Roman people?

A. That of posts. The Romans had no public posts as we have. The first invention of public couriers is ascribed to Cyrus, the Persian king. The emperor Augustus first introduced them among the Romans; but they were employed only to forward the public despatches, or to carry political intelligence.\*

Q. What was the first care of Augustus as soon as he had ascended the throne?

\* Lewis the Eleventh first established posts in France, A. D. 1474, but it was not till the time of Charles the Second, A. D. 1660, that the post-office was settled in England by act of parliament. The British parliament consists of the king and the two houses of lords and commons, who direct the affairs of the British nation.

A. To gain over to his side all the friends of Antony, to restore the senate to its former glory, to win the people and soldiers by presents and donations; also, by the advice of his friend Mæcenas, Augustus encouraged learning and learned men, and patronized the fine arts.

Q. What was one of the first acts of Augustus Caesar on being invested with the dignity of supreme Pontiff?

A. Examining the books of the Sibyl which were held sacred by the Romans. The original books were said to have been brought to Rome in the time of Tarquin, but were destroyed by a fire which broke out in the Capitol, and consumed the temple in which they were deposited. It occurred during the disputes between Marius and Sylla.

Q. How was the loss of the Sibylline books repaired?

A. The Roman senate sent persons to different parts of Asia, Africa, and Greece, to collect fragments of them which were dispersed in these places. When the messengers returned, the most learned men at Rome were employed to examine them, and select those which they judged to be most authentic. This second collection was also reserved in the Capitol of Rome, and was kept carefully guarded.

2. What opinion has been hazarded amongst

the learned regarding portions of the Sibylline books ?\*

A. Judging from those fragments which escaped destruction, it is imagined that they must have been of divine origin ; they were found mutilated, and it is probable they were remnants of the true prophecies derived from the Jews, which had been transmitted from generation to generation in the gentile world, and which accounts for the Pagans expecting an extraordinary person to come upon earth, equally and at the same time as the Jews.

Q. What Roman poet, living at the court of Augustus, refers particularly to the expected nativity of some wonderful child ?

A. The celebrated poet Virgil. Among those of his works extant, is a congratulatory poem addressed to his friend Pollio, who then bore the high office of consul. The poem is on the nativity of some child whose birth was expected during his consulate, and whose extraordinary endowments were to confer blessings on mankind. He was to be of heavenly extraction, to bestow universal peace, and to command the whole world.

Q. From what books did Virgil draw this prophetic annunciation ?

A. Virgil refers to the books of the Cumæan

\* See the Evidence of Profane History, to the Truth and Necessity of Revelation, preliminary to the Gospel, pages 318, 319. (Virgil. Bucol. Ecl. iv. Dryden's Translation.)



Sibyl, as the source from whence he drew his predictions. The images of this poem form so wonderful a resemblance to those in which the inspired prophets describe the times of the Messiah, that it is impossible to read the verses and not be struck with the similitude.

Q. What useful regulations did Augustus institute?

A. He suppressed the bad habits of the people and checked corruption in the senate. He ordered that gladiators should only be exhibited twice a year, and not more than a hundred and twenty at a time. He prohibited all low practices, prevented bribery in candidates, and made many other useful regulations.

Q. What noble instance of generosity did he give regarding Pompey's grandson?

A. Cornelius Cinna, Pompey's grandson, together with some others, having conspired against his life, Augustus reprimanded and dismissed them; nobly saying to Cinna, "I have twice given you your life as an enemy and as a conspirator, I now give you the consulship; let us be friends for the future, let us only contend in showing whether my confidence or your fidelity shall be victorious."

Q. What decree did the emperor Augustus issue throughout his vast empire?

A. "There went out a decree from Cæsar Augustus that all the world should be taxed."

Q. What did this decree of Augustus signify or require?

A. That all persons in the Roman empire should have their names and conditions of life set down in court rolls, according to their families. The Roman empire was proudly called "The World," and Augustus, the emperor, ordered the people to be registered, as is here stated, probably for the purpose of knowing what taxes (that is, money for public service) he might raise.

Q. What was the method of registering such an immense number of people?

A. All persons were required to repair to their own cities, to prevent insurrections, and to expedite the business.

Q. Did this extreme exactness, that every family should be registered, (*i. e.* their names taken down,) extend to Rome, equally with the foreign parts of the empire?

A. Yes, even in Italy, the consular edict commanded the Latin citizens not to be enrolled at Rome, but all in their own cities. And this precaution was still more necessary in turbulent provinces, like Judea and Galilee.

Q. What do you understand by "Latin citizens?"

A. People of Italy, not born in Rome, although equally under the Roman government.

Q. What opinion was very prevalent amongst people generally at this period?

A. Suetonius and Tacitus (Roman writers) inform us, that an expectation prevailed throughout the whole East, about that time, that a king should rise out of Judea who should rule over all the world.

Q. What was Judea at that time ?

A. A Roman province, governed by Herod the king, but subject to the emperor Augustus.

Q. What Jew, with his espoused wife Mary, was obliged to go up to Bethlehem of Judea, in consequence of the decree of Augustus ?

A. Joseph, because " he was of the house and lineage of David," the ancient king of Israel, who wrote the Psalms ; but Joseph was only a carpenter, the house of David having gone to decay, for the Jews were then under subjection to the Romans. The Israelites or Jews were most particular in keeping an account of their several tribes, and the genealogy of their families, on account of the divine promise that the Saviour of man should be born from amongst them. But this decree of Augustus, which obliged Mary and Joseph to quit Nazareth and go up to Bethlehem, fixes the precise time of their going beyond doubt or question. A study of the sacred writings is indispensable towards acquiring a knowledge of the history of mankind, and the merciful dealings of God towards a sinful world.

Q. When Joseph and Mary arrived at Bethlehem, what accommodation did they find ?

A. The place was so full of people, that Joseph and Mary were obliged to remain in a stable.

Q. Where was the town of Bethlehem situated?

A. About six miles from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judea.

Q. What was the state of the world at this period, and what event important to mankind now took place at Bethlehem?

A. The world, which had been so long agitated by war and tumult, now rested in profound peace; the temple of Janus was shut; when, as had been divinely revealed and promised to Adam, and foretold by a succession of prophets, our Saviour Jesus Christ was born at Bethlehem in Judea, in the days of Herod the king, whither the Wise Men of the East were directed by the appearance of a star, which led them by its lustre to where the young child was; and the joyful tidings of the blessed nativity were yet further proclaimed to the wondering shepherds, as they kept watch over their flocks by night, by angels chaunting in the illumined heavens: "Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will towards men."

Q. How many years are there from the creation of the world to the birth of Christ?

A. Four thousand and four years. Ancient history ends with the birth of Christ, and

modern history may be said to commence from that time, as all subsequent events are dated from this epoch by Christian writers.

**Q.** What Pagan king unintentionally bears remarkable testimony to the birth of Christ?

**A.** Herod the Great, who called the wise men to him, and desired them, when they had found the young child to bring him word, that he might worship him. But the wise men, knowing this was only a pretence, returned home another way.

**Q.** What did the cruel Herod then do in order, as he thought, to destroy our Saviour, and which proves how jealous and fearful he was?

**A.** "He slew all the children that were in Bethlehem, and in all the coasts thereof, from two years old and under, according to the time which he had diligently enquired of the wise men." This circumstance also shews how perfectly convinced Herod was, that some wonderful and mighty king was then born into the world.

**Q.** How did our Saviour escape from Herod?

**A.** Joseph received a divine warning, and escaped by night with Mary and the Child into Egypt, a country in Africa, where they remained until Herod was dead.

**Q.** How many of his own sons did Herod the Great cause to be put to death?

**A.** Three; Aristobulus, Alexander, and Antipater.

Q. Who succeeded Herod, undeservedly called "Great?"

A. Archelaus his son reigned, but not as king; on account of his bad conduct he was deprived of the government by Augustus, and banished to Gaul (the ancient name of France.)

Q. After the banishment of Archelaus, who ruled in Judea?

A. "Herod the Tetrarch," also called Herod Antipas.

Q. Why was Herod called "Tetrarch?"

A. Because he had the fourth part of the dominions of Herod the Great, his father.

Q. What prophet now lived of whom it was said, "And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest; for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways?"

A. John the Baptist, whom Herod feared. He is said to be "the prophet of the Highest," and to "go before the face of the Lord;" but it was Christ, before whose face he was sent as a messenger, and whose prophet he was. Therefore Christ is "the Highest," and "the Lord."

Q. What doctrine did John, the forerunner of Christ, particularly preach?

A. Repentance, and that without it there could be no remission of sins; he exhorted the people to turn from their sins and to believe in Christ, through whom alone they could be saved from the wrath to come.

Q. What does the name John signify in Hebrew?

A. "The grace or mercy of God," and it "is used to express joy and rejoicing."

Q. What became of John the Baptist?

A. The piety, virtue, and austerity of his life, added to his fearlessness in reproving vice and censuring all ungodliness, displeased Herod, who was reproved by John for his having married Herodias, his brother Philip's wife, and at the instigation of the wicked Herodias John was beheaded. John was born under Herod the Great, but was beheaded under Herod Antipas.

Q. We will now quit Judea, and return to Rome.—What celebrated Roman writers lived in Italy in the lifetime of Augustus?

A. Cicero, the patriot and orator, who was murdered before Augustus came to the throne. Virgil, the poet, wrote poems, called the *Georgics*, descriptive of pastoral life; also congratulatory verses to his friend Pollio; but his great poem was the *Æneis*, giving an account of the adventures of Æneas after the destruction of the town of Troy, until he finally settled in Italy, from which period our history of ancient Italy commences. Prior to, and indeed long after that event, the state of Italy is unimportant, and lost in obscurity. Ovid, Horace, and Varro, now lived; also Vitruvius, the architect. This celebrated literary period was styled, in compli-

ment to the emperor, the Augustan age. It is also sometimes called the age of Mæcenas, from Mæcenas, the friend of Augustus, he being the great patron of learning and learned men.

Q. Where did Augustus die, and what was his character?

A. He died at Nola, in Campania, in Italy, after a praiseworthy reign of forty-four years, to the grief of the whole Roman empire. The power of Augustus began in the slaughter, and terminated in the happiness of his subjects; so it has been said of him, "that it had been good for mankind if he had never been born, or if he had never died."

Q. Who was his successor?

A. His son-in-law, the wicked Tiberius.

Q. Whom is Tiberius said to have poisoned through jealousy?

A. His nephew, the admirable Germanicus, who was universally beloved; Pisa, a bad man, on whom the odium fell, killed himself. His wife, Plancina, equally worthless, was executed for being attached to Sejanus.

Q. Who was Ælius Sejanus?

A. A Roman knight, who, gaining the favour of Tiberius, hesitated at no acts of barbarity; he was at length accused of treason, and strangled by the executioner.

Q. Who was Agrippina?

A. The wife of Germanicus. Agrippina was a



woman of great virtue and courage; after the death of her husband, she was sent into banishment with the eldest of her sons; the younger were cruelly starved to death in prison, by order of Tiberius.

Q. What great event occurred in the Christian world during the reign of Tiberius?

A. In the eighteenth year of Tiberius, our Saviour, Christ, the divine Author of our religion, suffered death upon the cross, a sacrifice and propitiation for the sins of mankind, A. D. 33. Pilate, the governor of Judea, sent an account to Tiberius of the miracles, crucifixion, and resurrection of our Lord.\*

Q. What is to be particularly remembered, as it confirms the truth of the gospel on the evidence of its enemies?

A. The Emperor Tiberius made a report of these miraculous public transactions to the senate, convinced, from the account of Pilate, that such a person as he described must be

\* In the Chronological Table of Tytler's Elements of General History, it will be seen that just before the mention of our Saviour's crucifixion, "St. Peter, first pope, A. D. 33" is stated. Now, as *St. Peter NEVER WAS pope*, and the assertion is quite contrary to Scripture, students must not confound this most unauthorized and unscriptural assumption of the church of Rome with the true history of the Christian church, as founded by our Saviour and the apostles. The usurpation of the popes commenced at a much later period, above three centuries later, and the origin, rise, and progress of popery will appear in the proper course of Roman history. The primitive Christians taught the true apostolic doctrine, very widely different to that propagated by the Papal See of Rome, above three hundred years after.

divine, and desired that Christ might be accounted a god by the Romans.

**Q.** On what ground, then, did the senate refuse to admit Christ to be a Roman god, as it does not appear they doubted the truth of Pilate's statement?

**A.** The senate objected, because the proposal had not come first from themselves, alleging an ancient law, which gave them the superintendence in matters of religion: it was, therefore, owing to a jealousy of power between the emperor and themselves. The senate even commanded all Christians to leave the city; but Tiberius, by another edict, threatened death to such as should accuse them; thus the Christians remained unmolested during his reign.

**Q.** What was the end of Tiberius?

**A.** After a hateful reign of twenty-two years, he was smothered, or as some say, poisoned.

**Q.** Who succeeded Tiberius?

**A.** Caligula, a monster of vice, folly, and cruelty; he assumed divine honours; and, amongst his absurdities, built a marble stable and an ivory manger for his horse, gave it gilt oats, and placed centinels to prevent its slumbers being disturbed, and would have appointed it to the consulship had not his death prevented.

**Q.** What fine instance of female fortitude was exhibited by Quintilia, who knew of the plot against the emperor?

A. **Pompedius**, a senator, was accused of having spoken with disrespect of the emperor; the informer cited one **Quintilia**, an actress, to confirm the accusation, but she had the fortitude, although put to the severest torture, not to divulge the secret.

Q. What became of **Caligula**?

A. **Cherea**, a tribune of the **Prætorian** bands, who was present when **Quintilia** suffered torture, and was one of the conspirators, murdered **Caligula**, after a wicked reign of four years.

Q. Who succeeded **Caligula**?

A. **Claudius**, a weak man, who commenced his reign with clemency, but soon shewed his cruel and savage nature.

Q. What British general was taken prisoner to Rome?

A. **Caractacus**; he, on seeing the splendour of the Romans, exclaimed: "How is it possible that people possessed of such magnificence at home, should envy me an humble cottage in Britain?"

Q. What was the name of the first wife of **Claudius**?

A. **Messalina**; she was so bad a woman, that her name, if applied to any one, meant a term of reproach.

Q. Who was the emperor's second wife?

A. **Agrippina**, the unworthy daughter of the

noble Germanicus ; ambitious that her son Nero should reign, and fearing that Claudius might be induced to kill her, she poisoned him.

Q. Who succeeded Claudius ?

A. The worthless Nero. He put his mother, Agrippina, to death, and committed the greatest cruelties.

Q. What happened to Rome in the reign of Nero ?

A. Great part of the city was burnt down, and although Nero himself was in fault, the blame was laid on the Christians, who experienced the most dreadful persecutions.

Q. What two apostles suffered martyrdom at Rome, under Nero ?

A. St. Paul was beheaded, and St. Peter was crucified with his head downwards, a mode of death he chose, as being more ignominious than that of his Divine Master, A. D. 67.

Q. What three books of the New Testament were now written ; for it is supposed that St. John wrote his Gospel at rather a later period ?

A. That of St. Matthew was composed by him primarily for the use of Jewish converts, A.D. 61. It was written first in Hebrew, but speedily translated into Greek ; every other part of the New Testament, the Epistle to the Hebrews excepted, was composed from the first in Greek, that language being well known.

Q. Who was St. Matthew ?

A. A publican, or collector of taxes, under the Roman jurisdiction, and an eye-witness of almost all the transactions which he relates. It is not certain whether he died naturally or by martyrdom.

Q. What have you to say concerning the Gospel of St. Mark?

A. St. Mark was the companion and friend of St. Peter; therefore, his qualifications to record with knowledge and fidelity the transactions related in his Gospel cannot be doubted; it was composed with an especial regard to the instruction of Gentile converts. *Gentile* means Pagan converts.

Q. Where was it drawn up?

A. The concurrent voice of antiquity affirms that it was drawn up at Rome for the use of the Christians in that part of the world, and St. Peter is supposed if not to have penned, at any rate to have superintended the writing. St. Mark preached the gospel in Egypt, and is said to have died at Alexandria, probably a natural death. St. Peter was not even bishop, much less pope, of Rome; St. Mark's Gospel is therefore the best refutation of Roman Catholic assertion on that head.

Q. Inform me concerning the Gospel of St. Luke.

A. St. Luke, the frequent companion of St. Paul, composed his Gospel from the information of eye-witnesses of the facts which he

describes. He is allowed to be the person styled by St. Paul "the brother whose praise is in the gospel throughout all the churches." (2 Cor. viii. 18.)

Q. What became of St. Luke?

A. The place, time, and manner of his death are not ascertained.

Q. Relate to me some particulars of the Gospel of St. John, and where written.

A. The Gospel of St. John was written by him in Asia, and with an especial design to refute certain heretical opinions concerning the nature of Christ, with which the senseless and irreligious philosophy of the Gnostics had by that time infected the Christian world; but, like his predecessors, whose Gospels he had read and approved, he explains Jewish rites and occurrences for the information of his Gentile (*i. e.* converted Pagan) readers.

Q. Who were the Gnostics?

A. Philosophers, called Orientalists or Gnostics, opposed the Christian religion, and under various forms and teachers in the second century did much mischief to the Christian churches.

Q. What became of St. John?

A. He resided during the latter part of his life at Ephesus, having the bishopric of that city, and of others in the neighbouring part of Asia Minor, and died there at a very advanced age.

Q. Who wrote the Acts of the Apostles?

A. St. Luke, probably soon after the expiration of the residence of St. Paul at Rome, during two years, with an account of which the history (comprehending a period of about thirty years after the ascension of Christ) terminates.

Q. What is particularly to be noticed amongst Christians at this period ?

A. Christians, whether teachers or the taught, arrogated no superiority to themselves, but shewed their faith in the virtue of their lives, and suffered persecution and death for the truth's sake.

Q. What was the government of the church ?

A. Our Saviour, not valuing the form, but the spirit, of true religion, laid down no fixed rules ; therefore leaving his followers in secondary matters to legislate for themselves, provided only such regulations were in conformity to the purity, piety, and holiness of his doctrine.

Q. What form of church establishment did the apostles adopt ?

A. That of bishops, priests, presbyters, and deacons, and numerous churches in Asia, Africa, and Europe, were soon appointed, with their respective bishops to superintend.

Q. How was Christianity first introduced into Rome ?

A. Not by any man of apostolical authority, but probably by converts, drawn by their own private concerns from distant countries to the

capital of the empire. But however introduced, Christianity made a rapid progress, and doubtless a bishop was appointed in due time, which was usual so soon as a sufficient number of Christians formed a congregation. The bishop of Rome at that period exercised no jurisdiction different to the bishops of Jerusalem, Antioch, Ephesus, &c.

Q. What were the Epistles ?

A. Letters addressed to particular persons or churches, sometimes of approbation, exhortation, or reproof. St. Paul wrote fourteen epistles ; he was peculiarly the apostle of the Gentiles. St. Paul, in the epistle he wrote from Corinth, addressed to the Romans, notices the celebrity of the Rom. church.

Q. What are the words of the apostle ?

A. " I thank my God, through Jesus Christ, for you all, that your faith is spoken of throughout the world." (Rom. i. 8.)

Q. What pontiff was supreme at this time in Rome ?

A. The Pagan pontiff ; and by St. Paul thus addressing the Roman Christians, the probabilities are that no bishop had been appointed, nor was appointed until after the martyrdom of St. Peter and St. Paul, nor can it possibly be known the precise time when one was nominated.

Q. Did the bishop of Rome consider himself, or was he considered, superior to other bishops ?



A. Not in the least : neither the bishop of Rome, nor any other bishop, exalted himself, but in the charitable and meek spirit of true Christianity, taught the doctrine of Christ, condemning idols, and uniting to faith *virtue*.

Q. What astonished the Pagans of every country ?

A. Not only the moral, peaceful, and virtuous life which distinguished Christians, but the readiness with which they encountered the most dreadful death in the hope of immortality, through our Saviour Jesus Christ. The force of divine truth prevailed, and converts increased.

Q. Why do the sufferings of the Christians at Rome strike us more forcibly than at other places ?

A. Because the emperors residing at Rome made a more public display of their cruelty at Rome than elsewhere.

Q. Who formed a conspiracy against the monster Nero ?

A. Piso, a man of great integrity ; but it being discovered, a new train of suspicions was opened, which destroyed many of the principal families of Rome.

Q. What two distinguished persons were put to death ?

A. Seneca, a Roman philosopher, and his nephew, Lucan, the poet ; the chief poem of the latter is, " The Battle of Pharsalia," descriptive of

the conquest of Julius Caesar over Pompey, on the plains of Pharsalia, in the province of Thessaly, in Greece. B. C. 48.

Q. What was the end of Nero ?

A. Hearing that Galba, aided by Vindex, the Gaul, was marching to Rome to depose him, and likewise that the senate had decreed his death, after shewing much cowardice he killed himself.

Q. Who succeeded Nero ?

A. Galba, at the age of seventy-two ; but trying to repress the vices of the people, a sedition was formed against him, and the soldiers, headed by Otho, murdered him in the forum.

Q. Who was appointed after Galba ?

A. Otho ; but the army in Germany proclaimed Vitellius emperor, upon which a battle ensued, when Otho was overthrown and slain.

Q. Who succeeded Otho ?

A. Vitellius was declared emperor, but on his arrival at Rome he entered the city, not as a place he came to govern with justice, but as a town which had become his by right of conquest.

Q. What was the end of the unworthy Vitellius ?

A. Having become insupportable to the people of Rome, the soldiers resolved to make Vespasian emperor ; a tumult took place, and Vitellius was killed.

**Q. Who succeeded Vitellius?**

**A. Vespasian, a good emperor; he endeavoured to reform the manners of the citizens, setting them the best example in his own conduct.**

**Q. What occurred in his reign?**

**A. His son Titus took Jerusalem, levelled it to the ground, as our Saviour had foretold. The soldiers would have crowned Titus, who refused, and he returned to Rome in triumph. A triumphal arch was erected at Rome on the occasion, which remains to this day. Vespasian died after a virtuous reign of ten years.**

**Q. Who succeeded Vespasian?**

**A. His son Titus; he was called "The Delight of Mankind."**

**Q. What cities were overwhelmed by an irruption of Mount Vesuvius in the reign of Titus?**

**A. Herculaneum and Pompeii, to the south of Italy, near Naples, were quite destroyed, being situated at the foot of the volcano: the former city was ruined by the lava, and the latter by the burning ashes that poured down from the mountain. Pliny, the naturalist, lost his life by too great an anxiety to approach the awful spectacle.**

**Q. What was the character of Titus?**

**A. An example of virtue, justice, and beneficence. It is said that, one night, recollecting he had done nothing beneficial to mankind**

during the day, he cried out: "I have lost a day!"

**Q.** What Roman general greatly improved the Britons?

**A.** Agricola; after conquering the country, he took every method to introduce civilization amongst those whom he had conquered. He exhorted them to build temples, theatres, and stately houses, and caused the sons of the chieftains to be instructed in the Latin language.

**Q.** How long did Titus reign?

**A.** Titus died after a short reign of three years, but not without suspicion of treachery from his brother, Domitian, who had long wished to reign.

**Q.** Who succeeded Titus?

**A.** Domitian, A.D. 81. He was a vicious and inhuman tyrant. In his reign, persecution of the Christians was renewed; envious of the fame of Agricola, he recalled him from Britain; and that general dying some time after in retirement, it was supposed that his death was hastened by Domitian's direction.

**Q.** What was the end of the wicked Domitian?

**A.** Assassination after a hateful reign of fifteen years. He was the last of the twelve Cæsars.

**Q.** But you have only told me of eleven emperors called Cæsar.

A. Julius Cæsar, who was related to Augustus Cæsar, is reckoned; although he was murdered, and did not attain to the imperial throne, yet he is included, and, with the eleven succeeding emperors, makes twelve Cæsars.

Q. What Roman writer has written their biography?

A. Tacitus, the celebrated Roman writer, whose works are still highly esteemed.

---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

*The five good Emperors: Nerva, Trajan, Adrian, Titus Antoninus, and Marcus Aurelius.*

Q. WHO was Nerva?

A. A Spaniard by birth; he succeeded Domitian, and was the first foreign emperor who reigned in Rome.

Q. What was the character of Nerva?

A. Nerva was respected for his generosity and moderation; he died, after reigning a year and four months.

Q. Who succeeded Nerva?

A. The emperor Trajan, one of the best of princes, a blessing to his people, and the admiration of posterity.

**Q.** Who had been his instructor?

**A.** The philosopher Plutarch, a Roman writer, whose works are esteemed at the present day, especially his biography of celebrated characters, usually called "Plutarch's Lives."

**Q.** In what war was Trajan soon engaged?

**A.** In a war with the Dacians, a Gothic nation, who originally possessed that part of Europe now called Moldavia and Wallachia. The Emperor Trajan reduced the country to a Roman province.

**Q.** What was the conduct of Trajan towards the Christians?

**A.** In the ninth year of his reign he persecuted them, but on being informed of the innocent life led by the Christians, and of their inoffensive and moral way of living, he suspended their punishments.

**Q.** Did the Roman Catholic bishop assume any divine right at this time?

**A.** None whatever; every bishop in different parts of the world had the jurisdiction of his own church, and the unlawful usurpation of the popes had not yet commenced.

**Q.** What dreadful insurrection of the Jews took place?

**A.** This wretched people rose in rebellion in every part of the Roman empire, and committed the most dreadful barbarities; in retaliation, they were put to death with equal cruelty.

**Q.** Where was Trajan when this insurrection took place?

**A.** In the East, where he carried the Roman arms farther than they had been before.

**Q.** How long did Trajan reign?

**A.** He died after a glorious reign of nineteen years, A. D. 118.

**Q.** By whom was Trajan succeeded?

**A.** By his nephew, Adrian, in every way worthy to fill his place.

**Q.** When Adrian visited his whole empire for the public good, how did he benefit the Britons?

**A.** By building a wall of earth and wood to the north of Cumberland and Northumberland, to defend the Britons from the invasion of the Picts and Scots.

**Q.** What insurrection again disturbed Judea after Adrian had permitted the rebuilding of Jerusalem?

**A.** The Jews, ungratefully incensed at the privileges which were granted to the Pagan worshippers in their new city, fell upon the Romans and Christians who were dispersed throughout Judea, and unmercifully put them all to the sword.

**Q.** How long did the war with the Jews last?

**A.** Two years; the Jews were completely defeated.

**Q.** What was the chief recreation of the Emperor Adrian?

**A.** In conversing with the most celebrated men in every art and science, frequently observing, that he thought no kind of knowledge inconsiderable or to be neglected either in his public or private capacity, which could benefit his people, or improve his mind.

**Q.** What humane law did he enact concerning slaves?

**A.** He forbade masters to kill their slaves, as had before been allowed; and ordained that they should be tried by the laws.

**Q.** What was the condition of the Christians during the reign of Adrian?

**A.** It was a common practice for the people in different provinces to require, during the celebration of their public games, the destruction of the Christians, and the magistrates pretended they often complied for fear of popular commotion. Adrian at length issued an edict commanding that the law of Trajan should be punctually obeyed.

**Q.** What was that law of his predecessor Trajan?

**A.** After the Christians had suffered much persecution; when Simeon, the successor to St. James, as bishop of Jerusalem, was crucified at the age of one hundred and twenty years; and Ignatius, bishop of Antioch, was flung by order of



Trajan, to wild beasts; on the emperor being at last convinced of the virtuous lives of the Christians, he ordered persecution to cease, and issued a law of protection.

Q. What Pagan governor of Pontus and Bithynia (in Asia) wrote to Trajan, saying, he was weary of putting people to death, merely for being Christians?

A. Pliny the Younger, in his celebrated letters, praises the moral lives of the Christians, and contrasts it with the vices of the Pagans, thus unintentionally bearing testimony to the excellence and holiness of the religion of Christ. Trajan, in consequence, made a law, that Christians should not be officiously sought out; still if accused of being Christians, they were liable to death.

Q. We must now return to Adrian, who confirmed the law of Trajan: how long did Adrian reign?

A. Adrian died after a splendid and wise reign of nearly twenty-two years, A.D. 138.

Q. What did Adrian repeat when he was dying?

A. Some beautiful stanzas of his own composing, on the separation of the soul from the body.

Q. Who succeeded Adrian?

A. Antoninus, surnamed Pius.

Q. Of what country was he a native?

A. Of Nîmes in Gaul. He was both revered and beloved by mankind, and reckoned the father of his subjects.

Q. How did Antoninus act towards the Christians?

A. Accusations against the Christians were made the ground-work of many severities, which were ably repelled by Justin Martyr in a book called his "Apology," which he presented to the emperor, who, in consequence, confirmed the edict of Adrian, and persecution ceased during the rest of his reign.

Q. When did Antoninus Pius die?

A. A. D. 163, after an exemplary reign of twenty-two years and eight months.

Q. Who succeeded Antoninus Pius?

A. Marcus Aurelius.

Q. Whom did he associate with himself in the government?

A. Lucius Verus, as disgraceful for his vices as Aurelius was remarkable for his virtues and accomplishments.

Q. What became of Lucius Verus?

A. He died of the disease called apoplexy.

Q. What calamities spread desolation in the western world at this time?

A. Earthquakes, famines, and inundations, such as had never before happened; the pro-

ducts of the earth, throughout all Italy, were devoured by locusts ; and the barbarous nations invaded even Italy itself, but were subdued by Aurelius.

Q. Name some of them.

A. The Marcomanni, the Quadi, the Sarmatians, the Vandals, and other barbarous tribes, only interesting because their countries, once so savage, now form part of civilized Europe.

Q. What solemnity did the Pagan priest or pontiff offer to appease the gods ?

A. Besides vows and sacrifices, and all the sacred rites ever known in Rome, they exhibited for seven days together the solemnity called *Lectisternia*, that is, funeral banquets to the gods.

Q. What was the lot of the Christians, who were looked on as the cause of the calamities of this dreadful period ?

A. A violent persecution took place throughout the empire. The aged Polycarp, bishop of Smyrna (in Asia), and the disciple of St. John, suffered martyrdom. Also Justin Martyr and numbers of other Christians.

Q. Who are styled " Fathers of the Church ?"

A. Christian writers who lived either during the lives of the apostles, or the first two or three centuries after. Not being inspired, their works are subjects of opinion, but not of faith ; the Christian religion being founded *solely* on

*revelation* contained in the Scriptures, and not on the traditions of men.

Q. Name some of the most distinguished Fathers of the Church.

A. Polycarp, Justin Martyr, Ignatius, Origen, Cyril, Dionysius, and Clement of Alexandria; Tertullian, Eusebius, Irenæus, Jerome, Athanasius, Chrysostom, and others.

Q. What put an end to the persecution?

A. A shower of rain falling when the army of Aurelius were dying of thirst, it was attributed to the prayers of a Christian legion. This circumstance is mentioned both by Pagan and Christian writers. Aurelius was so impressed that it was a miraculous interposition, that he immediately relaxed the persecutions against the Christians, and wrote to the senate at Rome in their favour.

Q. Before going into Germany, how did Aurelius spend his last three days at Rome?

A. In giving lectures to the people on regulating their lives; having finished his admirable advice, he departed on his third campaign; he died of the plague at Vienna, after a wise and good reign of nineteen years, A. D. 180.

Q. What ended with the death of Marcus Aurelius?

A. The glory and prosperity of the Roman empire.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*From the death of the Emperor Aurelius to the reign of Constantine.*

---

## THE EMPERORS.

Commodus — Pertinax — Didius — Severus — Caracalla — Maximus — Heliogabalus — Alexander — Maximin — Pupienus and Balbinus — Gordian — Philip — Gallus — Valerian — Gallenus — Flavius Claudius — Aurelian — Tacitus — Probus — Carus — Numerian — Diocletian — Constantius Chlorus — Galerius — Constantine the Great, sole emperor of the Roman empire.

Q. Who succeeded Aurelius?

A. His unworthy son, Commodus, whose vices making him hateful to mankind, he was strangled, after a wicked reign of twelve years, A. D. 192.

Q. What have you to observe concerning the government of Rome?

A. The disorders in the empire, which began with Commodus, continued for about a century, till the accession of Diocletian.

Q. Who succeeded Commodus?

A. The wise and just Pertinax; but the emperor wishing to reform the morals of the soldiers

who controlled the government, he was killed after a reign of only three months.

Q. What circumstance shews the dreadful state of confusion the country was in at that time?

A. The soldiers actually proclaimed that they would sell the empire to the highest bidder.

Q. Sulpician and Didius offering to purchase the empire, which of the candidates was chosen?

A. Didius producing immense sums of ready money, was elected emperor; but the soldiers, not finding that he afterwards paid them so well as they had expected, killed him.

Q. Whom did the soldiers next appoint after the Emperor Didius?

A. Severus, an African by birth; he loaded the soldiers with honours, giving them such privileges as strengthened his own power, while they destroyed that of the state.

Q. What country did Severus visit with his two sons, Caracalla and Geta?

A. Britain; he built that famous wall which still goes by his name, extending from the Solway Frith to the German Ocean.

Q. What other Roman emperor before him likewise built a wall in Britain?

A. The Emperor Adrian, extending from the river Eden in Cumberland, to the Tyne in Northumberland.

**Q.** What was the condition of the Christians during the reign of Severus?

**A.** Persecution raged, and many eminent persons suffered martyrdom.

**Q.** What does the increase of Christianity throughout these incessant persecutions prove?

**A.** The power of divine truth on the mind, displayed in the fortitude, faith, and virtue of the great body of Christians. The papal power had not commenced, but the various churches were, at Rome and elsewhere, directed by bishops, who taught the pure doctrine of Christ and the apostles. It was forbidding image worship which made Christianity particularly obnoxious to the Pagans.

**Q.** What was the character of Severus?

**A.** Historians describe him very variously, but with many good qualities he appears to have been severe and despotic. He died at York, in Britain, A. D. 208.

**Q.** Who succeeded Severus?

**A.** The soldiers, during this terrible period of military government, elected both of the sons of Severus; but the wicked Caracalla murdering his brother Geta, became sole emperor.

**Q.** What followed?

**A.** Caracalla, a monster of wickedness, was murdered after a reign of six years.

**Q.** Who succeeded Caracalla?

A. The soldiers elected Macrinus, also called Maximus, who was soon murdered.

Q. Who succeeded Macrinus, or Maximus ?

A. The soldiers, who kept the power in their own hands, appointed the wicked Heliogabalus; but soon growing tired of him, he was murdered, after a hateful reign of four years.

Q. Who succeeded Heliogabalus ?

A. The worthy Alexander; after an exemplary reign of thirteen years, he was killed in a mutiny of the soldiers.

Q. Who succeeded Alexander ?

A. Maximin, who was as remarkable for his worth before he came to the throne, as for his excessive vice after he had attained to the sovereignty.

Q. Mention some particulars concerning this extraordinary but bad man.

A. His height was eight feet and a half, and his strength proportionate; he was able to draw a carriage which two oxen could not move; he could strike out a horse's tooth with a blow of his fist; and his immense size may be imagined when it is said, his wife's bracelet usually served him for a thumb ring. Maximin, from being the son of a poor herdsman, became emperor of Rome, but spoilt by power, his cruelties caused him to be murdered, after a reign of three years.

Q. Who succeeded Maximin ?



A. Pupienus and Balbinus continued for some time emperors, A. D. 238, but were both slain by the soldiers.

Q. Who succeeded Pupienus and Balbinus?

A. The worthy Gordian, who endeavoured to unite the opposing members of government, and to reconcile the soldiers and citizens to each other; but Philip, an Arabian, an artful bad man, caused him to be slain, after a successful reign of six years.

Q. Who succeeded Gordian?

A. Philip, who had cruelly murdered his benefactor Gordian; but the army revolting in favour of Decius, he was killed, after a reign of five years.

Q. Who succeeded Philip?

A. Decius; his activity and wisdom seemed, in some measure, to stop the hastening decline of the Roman empire.

Q. What was the condition of the Christians during this dreary period of vice and misrule in the Roman history?

A. From the time of Severus to the reign of Maximin, who was a cruel persecutor, the Christians experienced no molestation, and occasionally enjoyed marks of favour from the intervening emperors, during their very short reigns.

Q. What order did Decius issue concerning the Christians?

A. A. D. 249. The emperor commanded the prætor, on pain of death, to annihilate the Christian name, by extirpating all persons of that religion, or by torturing them until they should recant.

Q. How long did Decius reign ?

A. Only two years and six months, but during that period the sufferings of the Christians were most dreadful; the irruptions of barbarous nations into the Roman empire also added to the calamity of the times.

Q. Who succeeded Decius ?

A. Gallus, A. D. 251 ; a worthless character. Instead of courageously repressing the Goths, he consented to pay them an annual tribute, by which he increased their strength and weakened his own.

Q. What was the lot of the Christians ?

A. Persecution : a pestilence likewise spread over the earth in an unheard-of manner. These were awful times ; and we ought to be most thankful to be born in an age of tranquillity, and, above all, to enjoy the blessing of religious liberty, and in particular that of reading without fear of molestation.

Q. What became of the wicked Gallus ?

A. He was slain, after an unhappy reign of two years and four months.

Q. Who succeeded Gallus ?

A. The senate refusing to acknowledge the general of Gallus, *Æmilianus*, whom part of the army had elected; it ended in *Valerian*, who was stationed with another part of the army near the Alps, being chosen emperor, with the approval of the soldiers and senate, A. D. 253.\*

Q. What was the conduct of *Valerian* towards the Christians?

A. He at first restored peace to the church, but was persuaded to sanction persecution; *Cyprian*, bishop of Carthage, and *Sixtus*, bishop of Rome, were put to death; but from the captivity of *Valerian* until the reign of *Aurelian*, there was tolerable tranquillity. No change had yet taken place in the government of the church, which should be borne in mind; the usurpation of the Roman pontiff, or popery, had not yet commenced.

Q. What was the praiseworthy attempt of *Valerian* on ascending the throne?

A. He sat about reforming the state, but reformation was then grown almost impracticable. The few good emperors and friends to order who occasionally reigned, were usually either murdered, or lived so short a time, that it was impossible a country could prosper.

\* Concerning chronology, when young people arrive at an age to understand the various causes for chronologers differing, the circumstance will excite no surprise. Meanwhile, I have followed throughout whatever authority I happened to have in hand, considering one as good as another; the variations, moreover, being trifling and of no importance, I have confined myself to one date instead of several, which would only confuse.

**Q.** What became of the unfortunate Valerian ?

**A.** The Persians, under their king, Sapor; invading Syria, in Asia, took Valerian prisoner, as he was making preparations to oppose him. After seven years of insult and suffering, he was inhumanly put to death. •

**Q.** Who was appointed emperor when Valerian was taken prisoner ?

**A.** His son Galienus, who, instead of marching to rescue his father from a cruel captivity, gave himself up to ease and luxury.

**Q.** How many pretenders now contended for the dominion of the state ?

**A.** Thirty ; and these are generally known in history by the name of the "Thirty Tyrants." It is a curious coincidence, that in the decline of the Grecian empire thirty tyrants also disputed the government of Greece. .

**Q.** What became of Galienus ?

**A.** For his own security, he was obliged to take the field, and this unnatural son was slain by his own soldiers, Martian, one of his generals, having conspired against him.

**Q.** Who succeeded Galienus ?

**A.** Flavius Claudius, A. D. 268. He was a man of valour and conduct, but died of a fever after a short reign, to the great regret of his subjects.

**Q.** Who succeeded Flavius Claudius ?

A. The Emperor Aurelian, A. D. 270. He was born of obscure parents, had spent the early part of his life in the army, and was a man of unshaken courage and amazing strength.

Q. What famous queen did Aurelian conquer?

A. Zenobia, the widow of king Odenatus, queen of Palmyra, whom Aurelian reserved (after destroying the city) to grace his triumph, but allotted her an income and lands nearly sufficient to maintain her in her former splendour.

Q. Where was the country of Palmyrene?

A. In Asia, on the eastern boundary of Syria, now called Tadmor. The ruins of its ancient capital, Palmyra, continue still an object of interest to the traveller; fragments of temples, porticoes, and palaces, exhibiting in desolation the magnificence of the once famed city.

Q. Who was secretary to Zenobia, and put to death by order of Aurelian?

A. Longinus, the celebrated critic; his work "On the Sublime" is still extant.

Q. What testimony does Longinus give in that work of the superior style of the writings of Moses?

A. Longinus, although a Pagan, observes, in his Treatise on the Sublime, that the opening of the Book of Genesis, "And God said let there be light, and there was light," was the

finest example of the true sublime that could be produced.

Q. What remark have you to make on this observation of a Pagan?

A. That Longinus, as well as other learned Pagans, at different times, have been struck both with the beauty and excellence of the sacred writings, and derived pleasure from their perusal, although remaining unconverted from early imbibed prejudices and want of instruction. Christians ought to reflect on this, and being in possession of the Bible, should gratefully prize so invaluable a blessing.

Q. What became of the Emperor Aurélian?

A. He was meditating a persecution against the Christians, when he was assassinated, after a reign of nearly five years.

Q. Who succeeded Aurelian?

A. Tacitus, a good man, who died after reigning six months.

Q. Who succeeded Tacitus?

A. Probus, who was killed in a mutiny of the soldiers, after reigning about six years.

Q. Who succeeded Probus?

A. Carus, who shortly after his accession was killed by lightning, with several other persons near him.

Q. Who succeeded Carus?

A. His son, Numerian, who was soon murdered.

Q. Who succeeded Numerian ?

A. Diocletian, A. D. 284 ; in his reign was the tenth and last great persecution of the Christians.

Q. Whom did Diocletian associate with himself in the empire ?

A. Maximian.

Q. What barbarians distressed the Romans at this period ?

A. " The Northern Hive," as the hordes of barbarians from the North were called, consisting of the Scythians, Goths, Sarmatians, Alani, Carsi, and Quadi, over whom Diocletian gained many victories.

Q. What new system of administration did Diocletian introduce ?

A. Diocletian divided the empire into four governments. Maximian, his general, shared with him the title of Augustus ; and Galerius and Constantius Chlorus were created Cæsars.

Q. What extraordinary circumstance then astonished mankind ?

A. Diocletian and Maximian gave up the sovereignty, and retired to a private station on the same day, A. D. 305.

Q. What was the character of Diocletian ?

A. His reign continued twenty years, and

was active and useful; and his authority, although tinged with severity, was adapted to restrain the depraved state of morals at that period.

Q. After Diocletian had voluntarily resigned the throne, how did he occupy himself?

A. He spent his time in cultivating his garden, assuring his visitors that he only then began to enjoy the world, when he was thought by the rest of mankind to have forsaken it. A memorable example of the truth, that true happiness can only arise from a peaceful and contented mind, and the rational and innocent employment of time. Happiness may accompany grandeur, yet is in every way independent of it.

Q. What followed on the resignation of the two emperors, Diocletian and Maximian?

A. Constantius Chlorus (so called from the paleness of his complexion) and Galerius were immediately chosen to succeed them.

Q. What difference was displayed in their characters?

A. Constantius was virtuous, valiant, and merciful; but Galerius was savage and cruel. Constantius governed the West and Galerius the East, but the greatness of the task soon induced them to take in two partners more.

Q. Whom did Constantius and Galerius join with themselves in the Government?

A. Severus and Maximin; they were created Cæsars with supreme power.



**Q.** What became of Constantius Chlorus?

**A.** Constantius died in Britain, and with his last breath appointed his son, Constantine, his successor. Galerius, however, refused to acknowledge his title.

**Q.** Why did Galerius refuse to acknowledge Constantine?

**A.** Because he had adopted Licinius, whom he preferred. Galerius shortly after died of a distemper.

**Q.** Who then ruled the Roman empire?

**A.** Constantine, surnamed the Great, and three others.

**Q.** Who were the three competitors, and what became of them?

**A.** Maxentius tyrannized in Rome, and after being defeated, was drowned in crossing the river Tiber. Licinius likewise was defeated, but was allowed to live peaceably in retirement. Maximin, who governed in the East, also suffered an overthrow and died; thus Constantine was left without a rival, and became sole emperor of the Roman empire, with the title of Constantine the Great.

**Q.** Prior to the defeat of Maxentius by Constantine, what extraordinary sign appeared in the heavens, in sight both of Pagans and Christians?

**A.** One evening the army of Constantine, then in Gaul, being intent upon its march to-

wards Rome, were astonished by a pillar of light in the heavens, in the fashion of a cross, with this inscription: "In this overcome," which made so deep an impression on the mind of Constantine, that he became converted to Christianity. Constantine caused a royal standard to be made like that he had seen in the heavens, to be carried before him in his wars.

Q. After defeating Maxentius, at Rome, in what manner did Constantine enter the city after his triumph; so very different to former Roman emperors?

A. Constantine, the first Christian emperor, disclaimed all praise the Roman senate and people were ready to offer; and ascribed his success to a superior power.

Q. How did Constantine act after consulting the principal teachers of Christianity?

A. He made a public avowal of his being a Christian.

Q. In order to shew his reverence for the cross, what did he order?

A. He ordered a cross to be placed at the right of all his statues, with this inscription: "That under the influence of that victorious cross, Constantine had delivered the city from the yoke of tyrannical power, and had restored the senate and people of Rome to their ancient authority."

Q. What edict was soon after issued?

A. That Christians should be eased of all their grievances, and received into places of trust and power.

Q. What punishment did Constantine forbid as derogatory to the Christian religion?

A. Execution on the cross. Constantine also ordered numerous churches to be built for Christian worship.

Q. What great increase of authority did Constantine confer on all bishops?

A. He commanded, that in all the provinces of the empire the orders of the bishops should be strictly obeyed. From this period the bishop of Rome gradually rose in power, and the homage which had been paid to the Pagan pontiff soon became transferred to him.

Q. What heresy, or error, which disturbed the Christian church, was condemned by the council of Nice, in Bithynia, a country in Asia Minor?

A. The Arian heresy. Arius, a presbyter of Alexandria, denied the divinity of Christ; but at the council of Nice, consisting of three hundred and eighteen bishops, besides a multitude of presbyters and deacons, together with Constantine himself, it was generally condemned, and the emperor banished Arius and his associates to a remote part of the empire, A. D. 325.

Q. What deplorable change did the Roman

Christian church undergo, as ignorance and superstition increased?

A. The Christian Roman church had now undergone a fatal change. Superstition advanced with rapid strides, and made successful inroads in every quarter; and it no longer possessed the simple apostolic character which, three centuries before, had received the commendation of St. Paul.

Q. Name some practices allowed by the bishops of Rome, quite opposed to the Gospel of Christ.

A. The gaudy ceremonies of heathen idolatry were transferred, or accommodated to the rites of Christian worship. The worship of relics and images commenced; monkish institutions were formed into a system; celibacy was imposed more and more rigorously on the clergy; and, besides numerous Pagan customs being retained, the invocation of angels had crept into the church.

Q. Were these and other errors adopted throughout the Christian world?

A. No; a close attention to the history of the Christian church will shew there were always Christians in various districts who protested against these corruptions; but the Roman Catholic power became so great, as to stifle reformation for many centuries.

Q. What species of idolatry had already

crept into the church at Rome in the preceding century?

A. The reverence shewn to the memory of those holy persons who had suffered martyrdom, had, in the second century, been carried to excess. The evil increased, and the sanctity ascribed to the spot where their remains were deposited, was gradually extended to the remains themselves.

Q. What council forbade the invocation of angels, it being directly contrary to the Gospel?

A. The practice was solemnly forbidden by one of the canons of the council, held about A. D. 387, at Laodicea. Notwithstanding, the Roman Catholic church retained the error and continues so to do.

Q. But what two most wicked maxims prevailed amongst the Roman Catholic clergy, directly contrary to the precepts of the Gospel?

A. The one, that deceit and falsehood, for the advantage of the church, were virtues; the other, that obstinate error in religion was justly punishable by civil penalties and corporal inflictions.

Q. What reflection arises when noticing the moral and Pagan corruption that spread amongst Christians, and was propagated by the Christian bishops of Rome?

A. The solemn importance of that petition in the Lord's Prayer, "Lead us not into temptation."

So long as Christians suffered, and had to seal with their blood their faith in Christ, so long the bishops and teachers studied the New Testament in earnest sincerity; and taught it in its purity to the people, who were as a flock guided by their respective shepherds. But when persecution ceased and the Roman emperor became a Christian; when neither he nor the multitude any longer regarded the person of the Pagan pontiff as sacred; the Christian bishop of Rome, unable to resist the temptation which the sacred character, splendour, and importance of his office inspired, transferred to himself gradually, as the opportunity occurred, the same assumption of supreme divine authority by the enforcing of which the Pontifex Maximus, or chief priest, had from the earliest period of the Roman history directed the minds of the people to himself, as the sacred head of the Roman church.

**Q.** What other circumstance contributed to ingraft Paganism on Christianity?

**A.** Although Constantine was converted, yet he retained many of his former habits and superstitions, and the number of crosses erected to commemorate his conversion, doubtless, led to that idolatrous reverence which is still paid to the cross amongst Roman Catholics; for in Papistical countries, it is constantly seen erected by the roadside, with sometimes an image of our Saviour affixed.

Q. How do you account for such an idolatrous custom being still retained?

A. From the people even now having no knowledge of the truths of Christianity, owing to the Scripture not being permitted to be read; for wherever the Bible is read, Roman Catholics usually become Protestants, as will be proved in the history of the reformation.

Q. What was the character of Constantine the Great?

A. Christian writers of that period have adorned his character with every strain of panegyric, and the heathen, on the contrary, have loaded it with the violence of invective.

Q. But what may be gathered from such contrary opinions?

A. It seems to have been composed of a mixture of virtues and vices, of piety and credulity, of courage and cruelty, of justice and ambition; but it is difficult to arrive at the truth of a character so variously represented.

Q. Whom did Constantine condemn to death?

A. Fausta his wife, and his son, Crispus, but the reason of his so doing is not perfectly known.

Q. What was the state of the Roman empire at this period?

A. Great ignorance prevailed throughout it, added to which the unwise policy of Constantine greatly hastened the decline of the empire.

## CHAPTER XXV.

*The decline of the Roman Empire. Its History from the time of Constantine. The commencement of the power of the Pope, established by imperial grants, to the division of the kingdom into the Eastern and Western Empire, under the Emperors Arcadius and Honorius.*

Q. WHAT is meant by the decline of a country, or empire?

A. When it loses its virtue, power, and wealth, and ceases to be considered of importance.

Q. What occasioned the decline of the Roman empire?

A. Amongst many causes, may be named its overgrown territory, beyond the possibility of being kept together; perpetual civil commotions; despotic bad government; the incursions of barbarous nations; and the Roman character no longer retaining its ancient independence, honour, and worth.

Q. But what hastened the destruction of the empire?

A. The Emperor Constantine removing the



seat of empire from Rome to Byzantium, which city was afterwards called Constantinople.

Q. What reason is assigned for Constantine making this change?

A. In the beginning of his reign Constantine was mild, equitable, and politic; but giving way to his natural temper, which was severe and cruel, towards the latter part of his reign he lost the affections of his subjects, and in disgust determined to remove the government from Constantinople.

Q. What evil consequences followed the removal of Constantine from Rome?

A. The court followed the sovereign, and the grandeur, opulence, and trade of Rome were soon transferred to the eastern city, by which Rome became both depopulated and impoverished.

Q. What barbarous nation invaded Italy?

A. The Goths, finding that the Romans had withdrawn all their garrisons along the Danube, ravaged the country, but were completely defeated by Constantine.

Q. Name some of the barbarous tribes that desolated the West, besides the Goths.

A. The Franks, Saxons, Alemanni, and Sarmatians, who were repulsed.

Q. In what year did the Emperor Constantine die?

A. He died A. D. 337, of an intermitting fever, after a reign of nearly thirty-two years.

Q. Who succeeded the Emperor Constantine ?

A. Constantine divided the empire between his three sons and two nephews ; but Constantius (the youngest of the sons) finally got rid of all his competitors, and ruled the empire alone.

Q. How did Constantius conduct himself when emperor of the Roman empire ?

A. Constantius indolently wasted his time in theological controversies (arguments on religious subjects), and residing in the East, he gave himself up to an effeminate life, by which public affairs in the West became more and more deranged.

Q. How long did Constantius reign ?

A. After a weak, timid, and unsuccessful reign, Constantius died, having reigned thirty-eight years, and was succeeded by his cousin Julian.

Q. By what name is Julian usually distinguished ?

A. Julian "the Apostate," so called because he renounced Christianity for Paganism.

Q. Where did Julian imbibe his dislike to Christianity ?

A. At Athens, where he was educated and taught the philosophy of Plato. The confusion of ideas created by Grecian learning was the

source of much error in the early ages of the church.

Q. What means did Julian take to suppress the Christian religion ?

A. He deprived the Christians of their privileges, shut up their schools, encouraged Pagan philosophers to vilify the Gospel, and even wrote against it himself.

Q. In order to decry the prophecies of Christ, what city did he wish rebuilt ?

A. He encouraged the Jews to rebuild the city of Jerusalem, which had been completely levelled to the ground. Our Saviour had foretold that not one stone should be left upon another.

Q. In what manner was the attempt frustrated, on the testimony both of Jewish and Pagan writers of that period ?

A. Ammianus Marcellinus, a Pagan philosopher, (and his relation is confirmed by an eminent Jewish writer,) states, that earthquakes and the repeated eruptions of balls of fire, dispersed the terrified workmen and demolished their labours, so that the undertaking was abandoned.

Q. What was the character of Julian the Apostate ?

A. He possessed considerable talent and military courage, but was superstitious in the extreme, and addicted to magic, vain, artful,

and cunning. He died in the Persian war, after a short reign.

Q. Who succeeded Julian the Apostate?

A. The Emperor Jovian, who re-established the Christian religion: he died after some months, and was succeeded by Valentinian, whom he had associated with himself in the empire.

Q. In what year did the Roman emperors invest the bishop of Rome with the spiritual supremacy of the West?

A. The bishop of Rome, whom we shall henceforth call the *Pope*, received about A. D. 379, by an edict from the Emperors Valentinian and Gratian, a somewhat undefined, yet apparently supreme jurisdiction over the church of the western empire.

Q. The pope, or bishop, (or, as the Pagan high-priest of old was called, pontiff of Rome,) having thus obtained the imperial grant of *supreme* spiritual authority, by what acts did he announce it?

A. The pope thenceforward issued decretal epistles; appointed vicars in the provinces; cited the bishops to Rome; convoked general councils; and openly announced himself as head and sovereign of the catholic or universal church of Christ.

Q. What other emperors, besides Valentinian and Gratian, confirmed his supremacy?

A. From Theodosius and Valentinian the Third, he obtained, A. D. 445, another edict, confirming in the amplest manner these enormous pretensions.

Q. From whom did you say the popes derived their overgrown power?

A. From grants conferred on them by different Roman emperors, after the time of Constantine, but more especially by Gratian and Valentinian. The Roman pontiff, moreover, by his princely revenues, his magnificence, and the reverence attached to the sacred office, acquired such influence over the Roman people, as rendered him at last a person no less dreaded than courted by the emperors.

Q. How did the pope obtain such immense wealth, having as yet no territory?

A. By making religion a trade, conducted by the priests, in the sale of images and relics, the sale of forgiveness of sins, prayers for the souls of the dead, for which the friends of the departed paid various prices; and by enormous funds from religious houses. For in these corrupt ages, to endow a convent and contribute largely to the church, was deemed more meritorious than a good life. By such and other species of fraud, the Roman Catholic church soon became one of great wealth.

Q. Did the popes acknowledge that their supreme power over the western church was

derived from the grants of different emperors, as was the case.

A. No ; the popes, setting no bounds to their avarice and ambition, and to impose yet more on the ignorant multitude, declared not only that a pope was an infallible person, and could not err, but that he had a *divine* right to the keys of St. Peter, whose successor he pretended to be. A reference, however, to the New Testament, and also an examination of the history of the bishops of Rome during the season of Pagan persecution (who claimed no such pre-eminence), will fully prove the falsity of this assumption. Our Saviour chose twelve apostles and seventy disciples to go and instruct the world ; and his not exalting any one above the other, but teaching humility to all, shews his divine command was directly opposed to the pretensions of the popes.

Q. Whom did the pope pretend to succeed ?

A. St. Peter, who had lived above three hundred years before ; thus founding an anti-Christian claim not on the grants of various emperors, but by wresting to his purpose the eighteenth and nineteenth verses of the sixteenth chapter of St. Matthew's Gospel, in order to be regarded as infallible and supreme over all Christians of all countries throughout the world.

Q. By whom was the pope's authority successfully opposed ?

A. By the bishop of Byzantium, or Constantinople. The pope of Rome saw that bishop

triumphant over his most violent efforts, the weight of the eastern emperors being thrown into the scale of his competitor. Moreover, A. D. 451, the Council of Chalcedon, by its decrees, crowned the Byzantium bishop with rights and honours in every respect equal to those which had been conferred on the ecclesiastical sovereign of Rome.

Q. What was the end of the disputes between the pope of Rome and the bishop of Constantinople?

A. The unlawful and arrogant pretensions of the pope being resisted by the bishop of Constantinople, and objected to by a large body of Christians, the dispute ended in an entire separation from the Roman church. The bishop of Constantinople styled himself patriarch, and from that time to this those Christians who acknowledge him as their head are said to be of the Greek church, as those who support the pope are of the Roman.

Q. Explain the verses you alluded to in St. Matthew. What are the words which the popes have wrested to their purpose?

A. "And I say also unto thee, that thou art Peter, and upon this rock will I build my church, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it."

Q. On what occasion did our Saviour say his to St. Peter?

A. On St. Peter telling our Saviour the

various opinions held amongst men concerning him, Christ inquired, "But whom say ye that I am?" on which St. Peter answered, "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God;" or, in other words, "God manifest in the flesh to destroy the works of the devil." And this truth is the rock on which Christ promises to build his church; which doctrine is here declared by our Saviour himself, in reply to St. Peter, with whom he was conversing, to be the necessary belief of all Christians; but had no farther reference to St. Peter personally, except as an apostle who promulgated the truth.

Q. Repeat the nineteenth verse of the sixteenth chapter of St. Matthew, which succeeds.

A. "And I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."

Q. What is here meant by "the keys?"

A. "The keys" is clearly a figurative expression, referring to the power which necessarily devolved on the apostles, of founding Christian churches, being the first preachers of the gospel, and of making laws, that good order might be established. "By this expression of giving the keys to St. Peter, our Saviour did not confer on him any supremacy over the other apostles, or over the whole church; though he says that these 'keys' were given to him, that



with them he might bind and loose, the expression is not particularly applied to him, but belongs equally to the other apostles, as appears from Matthew xviii. 18."

Q. But what is meant by, "whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven?"

A. That whatsoever was lawful or unlawful on earth, that is, agreeable with, or contrary to, the gospel, would be approved or confirmed in heaven.

Q. Is there any difference of admission into the church of Christ now, to what there was when our Saviour was upon earth?

A. None whatever: repentance, faith, and obedience; a belief in the divine Trinity, and in the inspired word of God contained in the holy Scriptures, and an endeavour to walk conformably to the same, trusting for salvation only through the meritorious sufferings of our Saviour; constitutes the hope and belief of the Christian now as of the converted Jew and Gentile of old, at the first preaching of the gospel.

Q. Why is it necessary to have a clear understanding and proof that St. Peter had no supreme power, or, in fact, any power different from that of the other apostles?

A. Because those Christians called Roman Catholics, who are not permitted to examine the

Scriptures, assert, that St. Peter was the first pope, and that from his time there has been a regular succession of popes, as stated in Tytler's Elements of General History. Also in Vasi's Guide to Rome it is mentioned, "From St. Peter to St. Celëstine the Fifth, created in 1294, there were one hundred and ninety-two popes; and altogether there have been two hundred and fifty-four reigning pontiffs." But a close examination into the history of Rome will abundantly shew that such assertion is glaringly untrue, for neither in faith nor practice is there any similarity between the bishops of Rome during the season of persecution, when the *Pagan* pontiff was supreme, and the popes in the age of their supremacy, which succeeded. The papal usurpation did not commence till three hundred years after the apostolic age.

Q. What is your reason for saying that the bishop of Rome never had, either from our Saviour or the apostles, any power superior to other bishops?

A. One of many proofs is, that the important question settled at the council at Jerusalem, that Jewish customs were not binding on Gentile converts, "was determined according to the opinion of St. James, who seems to have presided in this meeting as bishop of Jerusalem, even in the *presence of St. Peter*, who, as we find, *claimed no authority or pre-eminence* over his brethren." No bishop of Rome, therefore,

ever had any such particular power given him, nor was such usurpation thought of in the apostolic age of Christianity, nor, in fact, for some centuries after Christ.

Q. Mention another proof that St. Peter held no supremacy over the church.

A. In the eighth chapter of the Acts of the Apostles, we find that the apostles at Jerusalem "sent" Peter and John into Samaria; which proved from his being "sent," that he was not supreme head of the church, as the circumstance of St. James deciding at the council at Jerusalem, shews that St. Peter was not the infallible judge of controversy, but in every way accounted the same as the other apostles.

Q. What other fact refutes the Roman Catholic assertion of St. Peter being head of the church?

A. It is a striking circumstance that it is *St. Paul*, not St. Peter, who addresses epistles to the *Romans* with commendation, and in those epistles warns the Christians of Rome of many of the errors which afterwards were introduced. No mention is made of St. Peter, who, had he been appointed head by our Saviour, would have been declared so by St. Paul. Besides, St. Peter was more likely to have addressed his own flock, had they been his, and not St. Paul for him. But these two great apostles thought only of labouring in their Master's vineyard, had no wish for temporal power, and preached against

those very errors which afterwards crept into the church of Rome.

Q. Give a further reason for declaring so positively that the bishop of Rome, in the apostolic age, possessed no power or spiritual authority different from other bishops.

A. St. Peter and St. Paul suffered martyrdom at Rome, and founded many churches in various places, yet neither they nor any of the apostles assumed exclusive power over the church, or it would have been stated in some part of the New Testament.

Q. What may be mentioned as a remarkable fact, and the fullest refutation of what the Papists assert, that St. Peter was the first pope or bishop of Rome?

A. It is a singular fact, that it is St. Paul who addresses the Romans *particularly*, but the epistles of St. Peter are *general*, that is, addressed to all Christians, and he styles himself in the first epistle, "Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the strangers scattered throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia." Neither in his second epistle is there any mention of being the head of any church, calling himself only "a servant and an apostle;" he likewise foretels that there shall be false teachers, and reminds Christians "that no prophecy of Scripture is of any private interpretation." St. Peter, moreover, notices the perverse interpretations affixed to parts of the epistles of his

beloved brother "Paul," whose epistles he expressly affirms to be Sacred Scriptures.

Q. What history becomes necessarily interwoven and inseparably linked in the history of Rome?

A. Church history; the bishop of Rome having received the supremacy of the Western Church soon became the political adviser in the temporal affairs of the kingdom.

Q. Whom did Gratian associate with himself in the empire?

A. Theodosius: and under these emperors Christianity was cherished, and its ministers obtained a very powerful influence in the state.

Q. What further have you to say of the emperor Gratian?

A. Gratian was at first much esteemed, but suffering himself to become the dupe of flatterers, he was killed in a revolt of the soldiers, after a reign of eight years.

Q. Who succeeded Gratian?

A. Theodosius the Great; who governed both the eastern and western empire with superior ability.

Q. What have you to remember concerning Theodosius?

A. That he was the last emperor who ruled the whole Roman empire.

Q. By what memorable circumstance was his reign of Theodosius particularly signalized?

A. By the downfall of Paganism and the full establishment of the Christian religion in the Roman empire, A. D. 380.

Q. Where was this interesting subject debated?

A. The cause of Christianity and of Paganism was solemnly debated in the Roman senate, between Ambrose, archbishop of Milan, champion of the former, and Symmachus, the defender of the latter. The cause of Christianity was triumphant, and the senate issued a decree for the abolition of Paganism, which was effected without persecution.

Q. What was the state of the Christian church at this time?

A. Although there were Christians who followed the pure doctrine of Christ and the apostles, yet great errors arose in the church, which caused much division, giving rise to various sects or denominations of Christians.

Q. When were the books of the New Testament collected into a volume?

A. In the second century the books of the New Testament were collected into a volume by the elder fathers of the church, and received as a canon (or rule) of faith.

Q. What more have you to relate of the excellent Theodosius?

A. He secured the prosperity of his people by wholesome laws, and died after a virtuous reign of eighteen years.

Q. What division of the kingdom did Theodosius make between his sons, Arcadius and Honorius?

A. He divided the Roman empire into two sovereignties, Arcadius becoming emperor of the East, and Honorius of the West, A. D. 395; and from this time, therefore, their history will have to be separately related.

---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*A brief account of the Empire of the East, from the death of the Emperor Arcadius, A. D. 408, to the present time, 1840, under the present Sultan, Abdul Medjid, now residing at Constantinople. The Eastern Empire, after the Emperor Theodosius, being quite distinct from the Western, a more enlarged account is not given, it no longer forming part of the Roman Empire.*

Q. Who was the first sole emperor of the eastern empire, and what city was the capital?

A. Arcadius, son of Theodosius, was emperor of the East, and Constantinople, the capital city.

Q. What was the character of Arcadius?

A. Mean and unworthy. He died A. D. 408.

Q. What is there singular in the reign of the sons of Theodosius ?

A. That, weak and unworthy as were Honorius and Arcadius, the laws passed in their reigns are remarkable, with a few exceptions, for wisdom and equity, evincing that at least able ministers must have been employed.

Q. Who succeeded Arcadius ?

A. Theodosius the Second, a weak man, who allowed himself to be governed by his clever sister, Pulcheria, who succeeded him.

Q. What barbarous nation overran both the eastern and western empires, under their famous chief Attila ?

A. The Huns, who extended their conquests from the borders of China to the Baltic Sea ; becoming masters of Thrace and Mœsia. Theodosius consented to pay an annual tribute to Attila, who was called the " Scourge of God." This is the same Attila who overcame the West.

Q. Where were Thrace and Mœsia situated ?

A. Thrace was a province of Greece, lying between the Ægean Sea and Macedonia, now known under the name of Romania. Mœsia was divided into Upper and Lower. Upper Mœsia now forms that part of Turkey in Europe called Servia ; that of Lower Mœsia, the province of Bulgaria.

Q. What was the state of Christianity at this period ?



A. The ignorance of the times introduced many Pagan errors into the church, and it was departing more and more from the doctrine of Christ and the apostles.

Q. Who succeeded the Empress Pulcheria?

A. Marcian, after whom reigned Leo of Thrace, and several other emperors to the time of Justin, who was succeeded by Justinian the Great.

Q. What was the character of Justinian, and for what act is he celebrated?

A. Justinian is celebrated for having instituted a code of laws, a proof of his talent and industry; but he was vain and tyrannical; and his ingratitude to his famous general, Belisarius,\* whom he entirely neglected, after his gaining many victories, is well known. Justinian was succeeded by his nephew, Justin the Second.

Q. After the succession and demise of many other emperors, mention to me what occurred in the reign of Leo, the Isaurian, emperor of the East.

A. The Emperor Leo, who came from the mountains of Isauria,† (a country in Asia

\* Justinian sent Belisarius into Italy; notice will therefore be taken of him in the account of the Western Empire.

† The young student must bear in mind, that the governments of the Eastern and Western empires were quite distinct after the death of Theodosius; but up to the seventh century, it is unavoidable in retelling the affairs of one country not occasionally to refer to the other. I mention this because the controversy concerning image

Minor,) endeavoured to work a reformation in the Christian church by abolishing image worship, which had become very general.

Q. Did the primitive Christians approve of the worship of images ?

A. No ; it being directly contrary to the Christian faith, the primitive Christians were possessed with an unconquerable repugnance to the use and abuse of images.

Q. How and when did image worship become general among Christians ?

A. Under the successors of Constantine, the bishops of Rome indulged the ignorant multitude with a visible superstition, and this Pagan custom soon increased to a great extent.

Q. What name was given to those who held the worship of images in particular abhorrence ?

A. Iconoclasts, or the breakers of images.

Q. How did the controversy concerning image worship end ?

A. Charlemagne, emperor of France and Germany, also king of Italy, united with the eastern emperors against the pope in this dispute, and in a council of three hundred bishops, assembled at Frankfort, A. D. 794, the worship of images was unanimously condemned.

worship and the disputes in the church, which ended in the East completely throwing off the power of the pope, and establishing the Greek church, must be touched upon in our account of the West.

**Q.** Did this decision put an end to the remains of Paganism ?

**A.** No ; for although the Emperor Leo and his immediate successors decidedly opposed the worship of images, in the next century, A. D. 842, a council at Constantinople decisively pronounced in its favour, and the whole East adored, (Armenia excepted,) without farther struggle, the victorious mediators of wood and stone.

**Q.** Did the Christian church in the East submit to the pope ?

**A.** No : after much contention, a complete separation took place, and the head of the Greek church was styled Patriarch of Constantinople.

**Q.** Does that church exist now ?

**A.** Yes ; the Greek church still continues to this day distinct from that of the Latin or Roman Catholic.

**Q.** Tell me a little more of the affairs of the East.

**A.** A succession of emperors continued, but in the seventh century the eastern empire lost even the shadow of authority in Italy.

**Q.** You say a succession of sovereigns continued ; what territory did they possess ?

**A.** Their territory was of greater or less extent, according to the successes of the Greeks,

Turks, and Bulgarians, and even the Latins, who attacked it on all sides.

Q. How ended the eastern empire ?

A. Constantinople was taken by the Turks, A. D. 1453, under Mahomet the Second, and thus was finally extinguished the eastern empire of the Romans ; the Emperor Constantine Paleologus being slain.

Q. How long had the eastern Roman empire lasted ?

A. Eleven hundred and twenty-three years, from the building of its capital by Constantine the Great, to the death of the last emperor, Constantine Paleologus, who was killed by the Turks at the taking of Constantinople, A. D. 1453.

Q. What circumstance is said to have given rise to the device of the Byzantine capital, viz. the moon's crescent and a star ?

A. When Philip of Macedon invested Byzantium, he availed himself of a dark night to undermine the walls, but the moon unexpectedly bursting through the clouds, revealed his plans to the besieged, and saved the town. The Byzantines immediately erected a statue to the Goddess Diana, and multiplied about their city representations of the moon. Medals have been discovered and are now extant, which perpetuate the memory of this event by a crescent and a star, with an appropriate motto. On the Turks taking Byzantium (or Constantinople) they

adopted the arms of the city, and the moon's crescent with a star still continues the ensign of Turkey.

Q. What was the ancient national emblem of Turkey ?

A. The tail of a horse was from an early date used by the Turks as a military standard, and the number of tails attached to the title of Pasha indicated the number of standards, or of troops over which he presided ; it now denotes his rank, whether civil, military, or naval. Pashas are distinguished by their tails, as a Pasha of two tails, or a Pasha of three tails.

Q. Who were the Turks ?

A. Descendants from a Tartar horde called Turcomans, or Turks. The Turks are sometimes called Ottomans, from their famous general Othman. Bajazet, another celebrated Turkish chief, was taken prisoner by Tamerlane the Tartar.

Q. Of what religion were the Turks ?

A. Mahometans, or followers of Mahomet, an Arabian, who lived in the sixth century, and pretending to be a prophet, founded a religion of his own device, and wrote his opinions in a book called the Koran.

Q. Did Mahometism, that is, the religion of Mahomet, spread ?

A. Yes ; the war cry being Death or the Prophet, and the religion adapted to the incli-

nation of an eastern people, it continues the established religion of the Turks ; but the Christian religion was tolerated.

Q. The Turks being Mahometans, is the Christian faith tolerated in Turkey ?

A. Yes ; from that time to the present the Greek Christians have regularly chosen their own patriarch, whom the sultan instals ; although his authority continues to be disputed by the Latin (or Roman Catholic) patriarch, chosen by the pope, who lives at Rome.

Q. Have you any thing more to say concerning the eastern empire ?

A. No ; it was destroyed by the Turks, who have still possession of it, and the present sultan, Abdul Medjid, son of Mahmoud the Second, succeeded without opposition to the Ottoman empire immediately on the death of his father, and is now residing at Constantinople, and at perfect peace with the rest of Europe, A. D. 1840.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*The Western Empire, from the reign of Honorius, who died A. D. 423, to the extinction of the Roman Empire, under Augustulus, the last Emperor of Rome.*

Q. Who was Honorius ?

A. The son of Theodosius the Great, after whose death he succeeded to the western empire, of which Rome was still the capital.

Q. What formidable Gothic king invaded Italy in the time of Honorius ?

A. Alaric, king of the Goths, (also styled king of the Visigoths,) who, finding Honorius slow in paying some promised money, sacked and plundered Rome, but generously spared the lives of the vanquished, and preserved every ancient edifice from destruction.

Q. What became of Alaric ?

A. Happily for Honorius, Alaric died as he was preparing for the conquest of Sicily.

Q. What famous king of the Huns overran both the eastern and western empire in this century, and who, as you may remember, was noticed in your history of the Eastern Empire ?

A. Attila, who, after laying the East under contribution, attacked the West, which he also

laid under tribute. Attila, as before observed, was called the Scourge of God. His death gave temporary relief to Rome.

Q. What territory did the Romans lose at this time?

A. The Romans, being required to defend their own country, entirely left Britain, which then became independent of the Roman power.

Q. What other country did Rome lose?

A. The Burgundians were admitted to have a just title to their conquests in Gaul, (the ancient name of France,) and thus the western empire was gradually mouldering from under the domination of its ancient masters.

Q. What was the character of Honorius?

A. It was weak and insignificant, and he was ruled by his wife, Placida. Honorius died after reigning twenty-eight years, A. D. 423.

Q. In these wretched times of violence, what became of the Emperor Valentinian the Third?

A. He was murdered by order of Petronius Maximus, who was saluted emperor, and compelled Eudoxia, wife of the murdered Valentinian, to marry him.

Q. What did the unhappy Eudoxia do?

A. Eudoxia, feeling a natural horror of marrying the murderer of her husband, secretly implored Genseric, the king of the Vandals, to rescue her from a lot worse than captivity.



**Q.** Did Genseric, thus entreated, arm in her service?

**A.** Yes; Genseric, king of the Vandals, glad of an opportunity of invading Italy, arrived with a numerous fleet of Moors and Vandals at the mouth of the Tiber, when Maximus was killed by one of his own soldiers.

**Q.** How did Genseric behave?

**A.** Like a barbarian, as he was. After pillaging Rome, he collected whatever remained of public or private wealth, conveyed it to his vessels, and returned in triumph to Carthage.

**Q.** I thought Carthage had been destroyed centuries past?

**A.** Carthage was first burnt to the ground, and destroyed by Scipio Africanus, in the third Punic war, but afterwards rebuilt by order of Augustus Cæsar, and became the second city of the empire. It was again burnt by Maxentius, after which it fell into the hands of Genseric, king of the Vandals, but was finally demolished by the Saracens, in the seventh century, and the town of Tunis now stands near its ruins.

**Q.** Who succeeded the wicked Maximus?

**A.** Avitus became emperor, but being deposed by Count Recimer, assumed the sacred character of bishop of Placentia, and was at last sacrificed to the enmity of the senate.

**Q.** Whom did Count Recimer place on the throne?

A. The virtuous Majorian, who was murdered after a short reign of four years. Count Recimer now raised Lebius Severus to the imperial dignity, but he was deposed by the count, after reigning six years.

Q. Who succeeded Lebius Severus ?

A. Anthemius, a patrician and pro-consul, who was elected with the general approbation of the Romans ; but the powerful Count Recimer was resolved to subvert the throne.

Q. What did Count Recimer do ?

A. After taking Rome by assault, he put Anthemius to death, and proclaimed Olybrius emperor in his stead.

Q. What became of Olybrius and the wicked Count Recimer ?

A. Olybrius lived only a short time, and Recimer died two months after he had sacked Rome.

Q. Who was the next emperor of Rome ?

A. Glycerius, the nephew of Recimer, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor of the West, but was deposed by his rival, Julius Nepos.

Q. What happened to Julius Nepos ?

A. After a reign of five years, he was deposed by the barbarian confederates, who, under the command of Orestes, advanced from Rome to Ravenna.

**Q.** What high sovereign power did Oreste decline ?

**A.** Orestes declined the offer of being made emperor, but readily consented to acknowledge his son Augustulus, then a child, emperor of the West, and himself to be proclaimed king of Italy.

**Q.** What unreasonable request did the soldiers make ?

**A.** That a third of Italy should be divided amongst them ; Orestes refused, and was put to death by Odoacer.

**Q.** Who was Odoacer ?

**A.** A bold barbarian, who compelled Augustulus (the last emperor of Rome) to signify his resignation to the senate, and with him ended the Roman empire in the West, A.D. 476.

**Q.** What was the state of Europe at this time ?

**A.** The Saxons possessed Britain ; Spain was in possession of the Goths and the Suevi ; and Africa in that of the Vandals. Gaul was divided among the Burgundians, Goths, Alemanni, and Franks. The East was governed by its own emperors ; and the once proud, magnificent, and powerful Rome, which had for so many ages imposed laws on the rest of the world, submitted to a foreigner and a barbarian, whose family and country are alike lost in obscurity.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*From the fall of the Western Empire of the Romans, to the subjugation of Italy by the Lombards.*

Q. Who did you say was the last emperor of Rome ?

A. Augustulus, ending the empire twelve hundred and twenty-nine years from the building of Rome, and four hundred and seventy-six years from the birth of Christ.

Q. What great change now takes place in the history of the times, completes the downfall of Rome, and ends the once renowned Roman empire ?

A. Odoacer, king of the Heruli, having vanquished Augustulus, established his own dominion, and caused himself to be proclaimed king of Italy A.D. 476.

Q. The Roman people being conquered and under a foreign power, what more have you to say concerning them ?

A. Rome from this time ranking only as a principal city, the history of Italy in general commences from this period, and is best known under the title of the *Modern History of Italy*.

**Q.** What became of Odoacer ?

**A.** Odoacer was killed, and his dominions were seized by Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths.

**Q.** What was the condition of the Christians during these troubled times ?

**A.** The Christians underwent great sufferings ; they not only shared in the common miseries of the times, but had also to encounter the cruel usage which their religion drew upon them from their invaders, who were principally Pagans.

**Q.** What was the character of the Gothic king, Theodoric ?

**A.** Theodoric, deservedly named the Great, possessed every talent and virtue of a sovereign, and his equity and clemency rendered him a blessing to his people.

**Q.** What was the government of the Goths after their settlement in the Roman provinces ?

**A.** Monarchical : at first elective, but afterwards it was made hereditary. Notwithstanding the miseries attendant on conquest, the Gothic rule in Italy was humane and wise. Alaric, Amalasonte, Theodoric, and Totila, merit particular praise.

**Q.** With whom did Theodoric ally himself ?

**A.** With the surrounding nations, Visigoths, Burgundians, Vandals, and Franks, leaving a peaceable sceptre to his grandson, Athalaric.

**Q.** What people were the Franks?

**A.** The Franks were tribes of Germans; they conquered the Gauls, and founded the kingdom of France.

**Q.** Who governed Italy during the infancy of Athalaric?

**A.** Amalsonte, the mother of Athalaric, who ruled with admirable wisdom and moderation, and succeeded him.

**Q.** What form of government did the Goths and other barbarous tribes adopt?

**A.** Monarchical; that is, Italy was governed by kings, and the chief officers under the government had the title of duke or count.

**Q.** Who recovered Italy to the Goths?

**A.** The heroic Totila, who besieged the city of Rome, but forbore to destroy it at the request of Belisarius, the renowned general of Justinian, who was then emperor of the East.

**Q.** How came Belisarius in Italy?

**A.** After the conquest of Africa, and taking Gelimer, king of the Vandals, prisoner, Belisarius attacked and took Palermo and Syracuse, in Sicily, then landed at Naples, which had become a prey of the Romans.

**Q.** What did Belisarius do then?

**A.** He marched to Rome, which opened its gates to the lieutenant of Justinian, but being soon after recalled, he was obliged to leave Rome to the mercy of the Gothic general.

Q. Which of Justinian's generals was sent into Italy after the recall of Belisarius?

A. Narses, who had the credit of completing the conquest of Italy by the defeat and death of Totila, A.D. 546; and Rome, for the last time, saw the semblance of a triumph.

Q. What happened shortly after?

A. The capital of Italy (the once mighty Rome) was soon after degraded to the second rank, was transformed into a dukedom, and the exarchs of Ravenna filled the throne of the Gothic kings.

Q. How came that about, and who governed Italy at this time?

A. The exarch Narses governed Italy with ability for thirteen years, when being ungratefully recalled by Justin the Second, (the successor of Justinian, emperor of the East,) he invited the Lombards to avenge his injuries. The consequence was, this new tribe of invaders overran and conquered the country, A.D. 568.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*From the Invasion and Settlement of the Lombards in Italy, to the Conquest of the Kingdom of Lombardy, A.D. 774, by the French king Charlemagne, who raised the Roman Pontiff to temporal sovereignty, by the grant of a considerable part of the conquered territory.*

Q. WE have now arrived beyond the fifth century. What people invaded Italy, and settled in the North ?

A. The Lombards.

Q. Who were the Lombards ?

A. A Pagan people of Pannonia, in Germany, who, headed by their king Alboinus, conquered Venetia, Liguria, Umbria, Æmilia, and Etruria, and Alboinus was proclaimed king of Italy, amidst the acclamations of his followers.

Q. What Italian city did Alboinus choose for the capital of his new kingdom ?

A. Ticinum, since called Pavia ; in those cities which he reduced, a strong garrison was placed, under the command of an officer with the title of duke, which cities, in the end, became small sovereignties.

Q. What became of Alboinus ?



A. He was assassinated. The Lombards then elected for their king, Clephis, a man of valour and abilities.

Q. What became of the Lombard king, Clephis?

A. This prince extended his conquests to the very gates of Rome, but was murdered by his own subjects, whose hatred he had incurred from the cruelty of his disposition.

Q. What did the Lombards then resolve?

A. To abolish the monarchical form of government; but after living ten years under their dukes, or commanders of cities, they raised to the throne Antharis, the son of Clephis.

Q. What difference is there between an elective and an hereditary monarchy?

A. Hereditary kings succeed by right of birth; an elective monarch, as that of Lombardy, is a king chosen by the nobles and people, and need not be related to the preceding king, relationship constituting no right.

Q. The Lombards having overwhelmed Italy, with the exception of Rome and Ravenna, how did they treat the Christians?

A. They grievously afflicted the Christians.

Q. Did the enmity of the Lombards to Christianity continue?

A. No: in a short time the Lombards embraced the religion which they had oppressed,

and from the reign of their third monarch, Antharis, or Antharius, Christianity, although much corrupted, was firmly established.

Q. What was the state of learning at this period ?

A. The most deplorable ignorance and superstition prevailed. In the West, the little learning which remained was confined within the walls of the monasteries. It was, however, by the protection of those walls that the manuscripts of the classical authors, though neglected, were preserved, and have descended, with the sacred records of antiquity, to a happier age.

Q. What was the end of Antharis ?

A. While projecting the reduction of Rome and the exarchate of Ravenna, he was taken off by poison, after a reign of six years.

Q. Who succeeded Antharis, or Antharius ?

A. Agilulf, duke of Turin, A. D. 590 ; he was succeeded by his son, Adaluald, who was deposed.

Q. Whom did the Lombard nobility then place on the throne ?

A. Ariovald, duke of Turin, who had married the daughter of the deposed king, and his reign is noted for the rare circumstance of public tranquillity both at home and abroad. He was succeeded by Rotharis, duke of Crescia, who conquered all the cities of Venetia, or Venice, held by the Romans.

**Q.** Who succeeded Crescia, king of the Lombards ?

**A.** His son, Rodoald, who was assassinated, and succeeded by Aripert ; the latter died after reigning nine years.

**Q.** Between whom was the kingdom of Lombardy then divided ?

**A.** Between his two sons ; Gundebert, who settled at Pavia, and Partharit, at Milan, which, with other cities of Italy, had become of importance.

**Q.** What have you to relate of the Italian sovereignty of Lombardy ?

**A.** So many of its kings coming to a violent death, sufficiently marks the troubled character of the times. Grimoald, duke of Benevento, murdered Gundebert in his own palace, at Pavia, and obtained forcible possession of Lombardy ; Partharit saved himself by escaping into Gaul, A. D. 663.

**Q.** After the death of the usurper Grimoald, Partharit returned ; whom did he associate in the government ?

**A.** His son, Cunipert, who died much lamented ; his other son, Luitbert, a minor, succeeded, but was stifled by order of Regumbert, duke of Turin. Asprand, who had been left guardian to the young king, defeated the son of the usurper who had succeeded, and was, by the unanimous consent of the people, elected king.

Q. Who succeeded Asprand in the year 722 ?

A. Luitprand. He led his forces against the city of Ravenna, which he captured ; but Gregory the Second, then pope, assisted in retaking it from him.

Q. What was the character of Luitprand ?

A. He was a good man, but too fond of war ; it may be remarked, there were perpetual disputes and jealousies between the kings of Lombardy and the popes.

Q. Who succeeded Luitprand ?

A. His grandson, Hildebrand ; he was deposed, and Rachis, duke of Friuli, was elected king ; but after reigning a few years, he resigned his kingdom, and retired to a monastery, where he died.

Q. Who succeeded Rachis, king of Lombardy ?

A. His brother Astulphus was elected by the Lombard nobility ; he was equally admired for his courage and prudence.

Q. What city was taken possession of by Astulphus ?

A. The city of Ravenna, and other places ; and he even threatened to plunder Rome.

Q. Apprehensive that the king of Lombardy would put his threat in execution, what did the pope do ?

A. The pope, greatly alarmed at his danger, prevailed on Pepin, king of France, to espouse his cause, by attacking the Lombards.

Q. Did the French king Pepin assist the pope?

A. Yes ; Pepin entered Italy at the head of a numerous army, and compelled Astulphus, the Lombard king, to restore Ravenna and the other places which he had taken.

Q. As a new people invade Italy at the request of the Roman pontiff, inform me a little concerning their history. Who were the Franks, or French ?

A. The Franks were originally those tribes of Germans who inhabited the districts lying on the Lower Rhine and Weser : they assumed the appellation of *Franks*, or freemen, from their temporary union to resist the dominion of the Romans.

Q. Who was the first king of France ?

A. Pharamond was first king of the French ; old chronicles mention also a Merovis, but the authentic history of France commences only with his grandson Clovis the First, who began to reign A. D. 481 ; he and his subjects became converted to Christianity.

Q. What country did Clovis conquer ?

A. Gaul ; this once barbarous nation, which had so often invaded Italy, now became part of France. Clovis died A. D. 511.

Q. What followed the death of the French king, Clovis ?

A. His four sons divided the monarchy, and were perpetually at war with each other.

**Q.** A series of weak and wicked princes succeeded ; we shall therefore pass over the intermediate French sovereigns to the time of Dagobert the Second. When did he die, and by whom was he succeeded ?

**A.** Dagobert the Second died A. D. 638 ; he left two infant sons ; the government during their minority fell into the hands of their chief officers, termed mayors of the palace, who usurped the government, founding a new power, which, for some generations, held the Frank sovereigns in absolute subjection.

**Q.** Who succeeded to the throne of France ?

**A.** Thierry the First, but in reality the regal power was in the hands of Pepin Heristel, mayor of the palace, who restricting his sovereignty to a small domain, ruled France for thirty years with wisdom and policy.

**Q.** France continuing to be governed rather by the mayors of the palace than by the lawful sovereign, who succeeded Pepin ?

**A.** His son, Charles Martel, succeeded to his power, and under a similar title governed France with ability and success ; he defeated the Saracens between Tours and Poitiers, A. D. 732.

**Q.** To whom did Charles Martel bequeath the usurped government of France ?

**A.** To his two sons, Pepin le Bref and Carloman, who ruled under the same title of mayor, the one Austrasia, and the other Neustria and Burgundy.

**Q.** On Carloman resigning, who succeeded ?

**A.** Pepin succeeded to the sole administration, but, aspiring to the crown, he consulted the states of France, A.D. 751, as to whether he might not depose the reigning king, Childeric the Third.

**Q.** Whom did the states consult concerning the request of Pepin, to dethrone the reigning king ?

**A.** Ambassadors were sent to the pope, to solicit his decision on the question, "whether the divine law did not permit a valiant people to dethrone an indolent and pusillanimous sovereign, and to elect a more worthy successor."

**Q.** What was the reply of Pope Zachary ?

**A.** It being more to his advantage to favour a powerful subject than a weak king, Pope Zachary decided in the affirmative ; consequently the lawful monarch, Childeric the Third, was deposed, and Pepin le Bref became king of France : thus commenced the friendship between the popes and the kings of France.

**Q.** What was the end of Childeric the Third ?

**A.** The deposed king was confined to a monastery for life. With him ended the first, or Merovingian, race of the kings of France, A.D. 751 : the second, or Carlovingian, race of kings succeeded.

**Q.** This iniquitous transaction concluded, we will return to the history of the kingdom of

Lombardy : how did Pepin recompense the pope ?

A. Astulphus, king of Lombardy, threatening to attack Rome, the Roman pontiff sent to his friend Pepin, who, to reward the pope for the service he had done him in deposing Childeric, turned his arms against the Lombards.

Q. What success had the French king in Italy ?

A. Pepin marched with an army into Italy, conquered Astulphus, and obliged the vanquished king of the Lombards to surrender for ever to the pope and his successors in the see of Rome, the exarchate of Ravenna and its dependencies.

Q. What is to be particularly remembered as taking place at this period ?

A. That the gift of the exarchate of Ravenna and other considerable territories in Italy, constituted the first, it is alleged, of the pope's temporal possessions, and that he obtained them by aiding the usurpation of a subject against the legal reigning sovereign.

Q. Did the Lombard king abide by the treaty ?

A. No : Pepin had no sooner returned to France, than Astulphus retracted the agreement and besieged Rome.

Q. What did the pope do in this difficulty ?



A. He renewed his application to Pepin, with menaces of excommunication in case of tardiness. Pepin obeyed, and compelled the Lombards to an immediate performance of the engagement.

Q. What custom did the pope observe from this time, A. D. 755?

A. The pope, acknowledged as a temporal sovereign, no longer dated his epistles and *bulls* (*written orders*) by the years of the reign of the Eastern emperors, as he had hitherto done, he now becoming a temporal prince in his own right.

Q. Who succeeded the Lombard king, Astulphus?

A. Desiderius, duke of Tuscany, assumed the regal title, and married his two daughters to Charles and Carloman, who had succeeded their father, Pepin, on the throne of France.

Q. Between whom did you say Pepin le Bref divided his kingdom?

A. Pepin le Bref, on his death-bed, divided the kingdom of France between his two sons, Charles and Carloman, A. D. 768; but the latter dying a few years after, Charles, surnamed Charlemagne, or Charles the Great, succeeded to the undivided sovereignty.

Q. Desiderius having a dispute with Pope Adrian, to whom did the pope apply for protection?

A. He applied to France for aid, and although Charlemagne was allied by marriage to Desiderius, he went to the assistance of the pope, and attacked the Lombards with such fury, that they fled before him in the utmost consternation.

Q. What concluded the downfall of Lombardy, after having existed as a kingdom for above two hundred years?

A. The successful arms of the French king, Charlemagne. The Lombard king, Desiderius, being defeated, took refuge in Pavia, and was compelled, after resistance, to surrender.—Charlemagne sent him and his unfortunate family, prisoners to France, and abolished the kingdom of the Lombards in Italy, A. D. 774.

Q. Mention some cities of note existing in Italy at this period.

A. Ravenna, Pavia, Verona, Turin, Milan, Venice, Rome, Naples, and other cities. These began each to have its own domestic history, which affords but little interest at the present day.

Q. Repeat, in a few words, the state of Italy, from the time of the Roman emperor, Constantine, A. D. 306, to the reign of the French monarch, Charlemagne of Italy, who conquered the kingdom of Lombardy, A. D. 774, and was crowned king.

A. The importance of Rome gradually declined after the Roman emperor, Constantine, removed to the eastern capital of Constantinople; still, both East and West continued under the

same government till the reign of Theodosius the Great. In this reign occurred the memorable debate of the Roman senate, as to the merits of Paganism and Christianity, which being decided in favour of Christianity, the true religion was thenceforth declared to be that of the state. Theodosius made another great change in the empire, by desiring it should be divided at his death between his two sons, Arcadius and Honorius, from which period the East and West became distinct sovereignties. Arcadius possessed the East, and it was governed by a succession of emperors until it was conquered by the Turks, in whose possession it now is, Greece only having lately become free. Honorius had possession of the West. Augustulus was the last emperor of Rome; and on his deposition the empire was completely dismembered, and Rome taken possession of by foreigners; Odoacer, king of the Heruli, causing himself, by conquest, to be crowned king of Italy.

Q. What commences at this period, as before observed?

A. The modern history of Italy. Odoacer was killed by Theodoric, king of the Ostrogoths. Belisarius, the general of Justinian, emperor of the East, conquered the Goths in Italy. Narses, Justinian's lieutenant, governing the country with the title of exarch, Rome was then made a dukedom; the popes were increasing in power, but were not at that time temporal sovereigns.

Narses removed the government to Ravenna, which city was the chief in Italy. Narses being recalled, as he thought unjustly, invited the Lombards to revenge his cause, on which those barbarians invaded Italy, conquered the country, and settled in the north. The Lombards, however, were soon converted to Christianity, and formed into a regular kingdom; but being at perpetual variance with the Roman see, the popes at last prevailed on the French king Pepin, to invade the country, which Pepin did with success, but it was his son Charlemagne who completed the destruction of the kingdom of Lombardy, A. D. 774, after it had existed as an elective monarchy for two hundred and six years. Charlemagne raised the pope to a temporal prince by the grant of territory, and confirmed what had been bestowed by his father Pepin on the Roman see.

---

## CHAPTER XXX.

*From the Conquest of Lombardy, in Italy, by Charlemagne, crowned at Rome King of Italy and Emperor of the West, to the time of his death, A.D. 814.*

**Q.** AFTER the destruction of the kingdom of Lombardy, which caused a great revolution in Italy, what followed?

A. Charlemagne made his entry into Rome, and was crowned king of France and of the Lombards, by Pope Adrian the First, and invested with the right of ratifying the election of the popes.

Q. When was Charlemagne crowned again?

A. In the last visit of Charlemagne to Italy, he was consecrated emperor of the West by the hands of Pope Leo the Third.

Q. What rank did Pepin, the French king, and father of Charlemagne, hold in Rome?

A. His father, Pepin, had borne the title of patrician, and he had himself exercised with that title a regular sovereignty over Rome. Money was coined in his name, and an oath of fidelity was taken by the clergy and the people. The pope, it should be observed, was even yet no more than a vassal to France, and subservient to its monarchs.

Q. Had Charlemagne any fixed capital?

A. No; yet he had possession of the greatest part of Europe; but there was an understanding between him and the pope that he should not reside at Rome.

Q. What very impolitic advantage did Charlemagne confer on the pope?

A. Charlemagne had assumed a thorough control over the clergy, no less than over the pope himself; and having nothing to fear from his power, granted him privileges which proved

very detrimental to his successors, and greatly increased the papal authority, not foreseeing the abuse and evil such power would give rise to under weaker monarchs than himself.

Q. What advantages did Charlemagne confer on the pope?

A. Charlemagne, by the influence of the pope over the Roman people, having been elected emperor of the Romans, in return he bestowed on the pope full jurisdiction over Rome and its territories, with a power subordinate only to himself.

Q. What three valuable principalities did Charlemagne confer on the pope?

A. Rome and its dependencies, the exarchate of Ravenna, and the Lombard provinces; thus considerable temporal power was added to his formidable spiritual influence. The southern provinces of Italy were still attached to the Greek or Eastern empire, Charlemagne not caring to pursue his victorious arms further south.

Q. What was the consequence of the canonization of saints, which, being a source of great profit to the church, was practised by the Roman bishops?

A. Chapels became as numerous for favourite saints as had anciently been erected to Pagan worship. The Virgin Mary had usually the greatest number of votaries, and Christianity, in

the most corrupt form of idolatry and superstition, prevailed.

Q. What is there peculiarly striking in the Roman people, both in their ancient and modern history, even down to the present time?

A. An extreme credulity and superstition, and an implicit reliance on whatever is taught by their priests: not venturing to judge for themselves in religious matters, they "receive for faith the doctrines of men."

Q. Give me an example, in order to explain your meaning.

A. Throughout the Pagan times of Rome, from the reign of Numa, the chief priest was called *Pontifex Maximus*, the supreme judge in all religious matters. It was an office of great dignity and power, inspiring the people with a sacred reverence, which was paid to his authority and person. The modern hierarchy, or religious government of the church of Rome, is thought to have been established partly on this model. The supremacy of the pope, no less than his infallibility, being insisted on by the Roman Catholic church, is the evident remains of Paganism, for there is no man that sinneth not, and Christ came upon earth to save sinners, even the whole fallen race of mankind; therefore is the pope called anti-Christ.

Q. From what college used the *Pontifex Maximus* to be chosen?

A. The Pontifex Maximus (or chief priest) was chosen from the college of pontifices, and the *Roman Pontiff*, or *Pope*, (as the Christian pontiff is called,) is elected from amongst the college of cardinals, pontifices, or priests; and the credulous Roman Catholics insist on his infallibility, that is, the pope cannot err!

Q. You alluded to the superstition of ancient and modern Rome; mention one example out of a multitude which might be cited.

A. Votive offerings were common amongst the ancient Romans, and this Pagan superstitious custom continues upheld in the Roman Catholic church, approved by the pope, as it was by the pontifex of old.

Q. What is meant by votive offerings?

A. In times of sickness or distress, the ancient Romans used to make vows to their gods, and to suspend dedicated offerings in their temples; thus, people saved from shipwreck hung up their clothes in the temple of Neptune, (god of the sea,) with a picture representing their danger and escape. Soldiers suspended their arms in the temple of Mars, (the god of war;) the offering varied according to the deity invoked. This practice of votive offering is still very general amongst Roman Catholics, with this trifling difference,—the offering is hung up in the chapel of a favourite saint, instead of the temple of a heathen god.



Q. What king reigned in England in the time of Charlemagne?

A. Egbert, who united all the Saxon kingdoms, and was crowned king of England.

Q. What people did Charlemagne conquer in Spain?

A. The Saracens, adding to his empire the territory contained between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

Q. Who were the Saracens?

A. A people of Arabia, (a country of Asia,) who became formidable both in Africa and Europe.

Q. What famous caliph of the Saracens lived at this time?

A. The famous caliph Haroun Alraschid, who made Bagdad illustrious by the splendour of the arts and sciences. The Saracens extended their conquests in every quarter of the known world.

Q. What city in Palestine, (now the country of Syria,) did the caliph give up to Charlemagne?

A. The city of Jerusalem, with the holy sepulchre. The Saracens were of the Mahometan religion.

Q. To enter into the conquests of Charlemagne would detain us too long; mention the countries subject to him.

A. Charlemagne not only possessed Italy and the whole of France and Germany, from the river Rhine to the Oder, and to the banks of the Baltic sea, but also Spain and the islands of Majorca, Minorca, Ivica, and Corsica, in the Mediterranean sea. In fact, he was master of nearly the whole of Europe, and Christianity spreading throughout the numerous tribes of barbarians, they became civilized and settled into regular governments; and the various kingdoms of Europe commenced from about this time.

Q. For what is the age of Charlemagne celebrated?

A. For the establishment of a new empire in the West, the kingdom of France, and to which Italy was subject. Charlemagne not only conquered countries, but improved them, and benefited France, most especially in the encouragement he gave to learning.

Q. What was the state of learning at that time, in the eighth century?

A. Extremely low; but Charlemagne gave every encouragement to literature and the sciences, inviting into France men eminent in those departments from Italy and from the Britannic isles, which, in those dark ages, preserved more of the light of learning than any of the western kingdoms.

Q. What were the ordinary subjects of the books written in those times?

A. What few books were written at that period tended only to darken the mind, consisting chiefly in the lives of saints and martyrs, full of absurd legends, and miracles of the wildest extravagance; the object of the pope (for the clergy only acted under him) being to keep the world in ignorance, the most effectual way to secure power to the Roman church.

Q. What beautiful order of architecture for religious edifices was now introduced?

A. That style of building or architecture called the Gothic, and many beautiful ruins of abbeys, chapels, priories, monasteries, and cathedrals, now remain both in England and France. The composition of Mosaic, or the art of inlaying for pavements, was also revived about this time.

Q. To what country did Charlemagne send for the purpose of instructing his French subjects in music?

A. To Italy; and the Italians are said to have taught his French performers the art of playing on the organ.

Q. What were the chief towns built of at this time, which shews the poor state of the arts?

A. The chief towns were built of wood, and even the walls were of that material, a proof of the very low state of the mechanic arts, but trade was beginning to improve in Europe.

Q. What old Roman fashion of gardening was still common in Italy, and adopted by other countries?

A. The clipping of trees in the form of birds and animals was common in Italy as far back as the reign of Augustus. It was called the topiary art, and is still occasionally met with.

Q. What city in the north-east of Italy was rising in commercial importance?

A. Venice. Genoa in time became no less celebrated, situated to the north-west of Italy, on the Gulf of Genoa.

Q. Where did the merchants of Italy and the south of France trade to?

A. To the Levant, and exchanged the commodities of Europe for those of Asia. The manufactures of wood, glass, and iron, were successfully carried on in many of the principal towns in the south of Europe.

Q. How does Eginhart, secretary to Charlemagne, describe the private life of that great monarch?

A. As most amiable, primitive, and simple. The daughters of the emperor employed themselves in spinning and housewifery, and the sons were trained by their father in the practice of every manly exercise. But as Charlemagne had nine wives, whom he divorced with little ceremony, it shadows the picture by shewing the immorality of the age.

**Q.** Name some important national improvements introduced by Charlemagne, who well deserved the name of Great.

**A.** He reformed the coinage; gathered the learned about him of every country; founded schools, and collected libraries; interfered with the tone of a king in religious controversies; aimed at forming a naval force; improved the laws; divided France into provinces, and these into districts, each comprehending a certain number of counties; and his encouragement of commerce and the fine arts entitles him to be considered a great man, and much in advance of the age in which he lived.

**Q.** Notwithstanding his elevated views of national improvement, mention some acts which shew the barbarism of the times.

**A.** He beheaded in one day four thousand Saxons, and pronounced the pain of death on those who refused baptism, or even who ate flesh during Lent.

**Q.** How long did Charlemagne reign?

**A.** Forty-seven years; he died, after a brilliant reign, A.D. 814. During his life, he had divided the empire between his sons; they all died except Lewis,\* who inherited the empire.

\* Lewis, when written in English, is allowable, but Lewis in French is not; for my young learners, doubtless, know there is no letter *w* in the French language: either Louis or Lewis is correct.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

*From the Death of Charlemagne, King of Italy and Emperor of France, to the Invasion of Italy by the Saracens and Hungarians.*

Q. It must be remembered, France was now the western empire, to which Italy was only subordinate. Who succeeded the Emperor Charlemagne?

A. His son Lewis succeeded, surnamed Le Débonnaire, or Good-Natured, and by the Italians, the Pious; he associated Lotharius, his eldest son, with himself in the government.

Q. In what manner did Lewis draw on himself the enmity of the Roman church?

A. His father, Charlemagne, had assumed a thorough control over the clergy; and Lewis, his son, was perhaps still more vigilant in chastening their irregularities, which drew on him the anger of the church.

Q. In what was Lewis particularly unhappy, and what pope encouraged his children to make war against him?

A. Although Lewis made a partition of his dominions amongst his other children, they quarrelled among themselves, agreeing only in opposing their father, against whom they made

open war, supported by Pope Gregory the Fourth, who pretended a right to interfere in kingdoms, setting every Christian principle at defiance in encouraging children to rebel against a parent.

Q. What became of the French king Lewis ?

A. Lewis was compelled to surrender himself to his unworthy children, who confined him in a monastery. Lotharius restored his father to his throne, but, broken-hearted, he died soon after, A. D. 840.

Q. Who became emperor on the death of Lewis ?

A. Lotharius ; but being defeated by his brothers at the battle of Fontenai, a council of bishops assembled, and solemnly deposed him, but *permitted* the conquerors to reign, on the express condition of submissive obedience to the spiritual court of Rome,—one of the many proofs of the sinister and despotic character of popery.

Q. Although Lotharius was excommunicated and deposed, a reconciliation took place between him and his brothers. What followed ?

A. A fresh partition of the empire : the western part being assigned to Charles the Bald ; to Lotharius, some provinces in France, and the nominal sovereignty of Italy ; and to Lewis, the kingdom of Germany.

Q. What did Germany become from this time ?

A. A distinct nation of Europe, independent of France, ruled by its own monarchs.

Q. After the death of Lotharius, who obtained possession of his dominions?

A. His brother, Charles the Bald, king of France. Charles purchased (it is said) his brother's territory from Pope John the Eighth, (who had no right to sell it,) on the condition of his holding it as a vassal to the church of Rome. Charles died by poison, A. D. 877.

Q. In what way did the nobles, under the distracted reigns of the Carlovingian kings, attain great power?

A. They strengthened themselves in their castles, and bid defiance to the arm of government, acknowledging the king as head, but disregarding his authority; they were, in fact, small sovereigns in their own domains, according to the feudal system which then prevailed.

Q. What new race of Goths from Scandinavia became formidable to France?

A. The Normans, or "North Men." At length, Charles the Simple granted part of the territory of Neustria, or Normandy, to their famous chief Rollo, who, with his people, became converted to Christianity, and settled in Normandy, with the title of duke, but subject to France, A. D. 912. Rouen was the capital city.

Q. What was the state of Italy at this time?

A. It was being contested among her native



princes ; but the pope of Rome might be said to be a monarch wherever Christianity was established.

Q. How was that vast power obtained ?

A. Universal dominion being the chief object of the popes, the establishment of religious houses, called monasteries or convents, greatly contributed to effect this, because the immense donation of lands to the church in every country increased, in fact, the papal territory ; and the multitude of monks and friars became so many subjects of the pope, whose business it was to enlarge the revenues of the church. Thus, under the mask of religion, temporal and worldly power was in reality coveted and obtained.

Q. What extraordinary effect did priestcraft and popish superstition occasion on minds early impressed with the duty of passive obedience to the Roman church ?

A. An ignorance and superstition which enslaved people generally, and often induced kings, dukes, and counts, to neglect their temporal concerns, and to shut themselves up in cloisters, to pass their lives in penance and prayer.

Q. When such was the case, what usually followed ?

A. No sooner did the pope or priest succeed in persuading persons of wealth to retire to a monastery, than the whole or part of their property was given to the church. Others, again,

who led vicious lives, received pardon from the pope by rich endowments to the church, money being admitted for the expiation of sin. It need hardly be observed, Scripture was a dead letter.

Q. For what were the popes of this age notorious?

A. For corruption, ambition, and crimes.

Q. But amongst the defenders of true religion and opponents to popery, with its attendant vices, to whom is honour due?

A. To Claudius, archbishop of Turin, a man of fervent piety, and eminent for his knowledge of the Scriptures, who, with unshaken perseverance, opposed pilgrimages, the worship of saints and images, and the claims of the popes to be the successors of St. Peter.

Q. In what wild and retired valleys did his truly Christian doctrine become established?

A. His preaching took durable root in the valleys of Piedmont, to the north of Italy; and no persecution has been able to shake the faith of, or to destroy the small body of true Christians inhabiting there.

Q. Name another exception and example of worth in this corrupt age of Christianity.

A. Photius, the patriarch of Constantinople, who opposed the usurpations of the pope. Though bred a statesman and a soldier, he attained, by his learning and worth, the highest dignity in the church.

Q. What tribe of Arabians were extending their conquests both in Africa and in Europe, and invaded Italy?

A. The Saracens, who crossing from Africa, invaded Sicily, and projected the conquest of Italy. They actually laid siege to Rome, which was nobly defended by Pope Leo the Fourth.

Q. What became of these formidable invaders?

A. They were repulsed, their ships were dispersed in a storm, and their army was cut to pieces.

Q. How was that part of Italy, which acknowledged the supremacy of the western empire, divided?

A. It was divided, like France and Germany, into feudal territories, among a few powerful vassals and hereditary governors of provinces, who were obedient or not to the reigning sovereign, according to their interest or power to resist.

Q. Name some of the principal dukes of Italy at that time.

A. The dukes of Spoleto and Tuscany; the marquises of Ivrea, Susa, and Friuli.

Q. What had become of the great duchy of Benevento?

A. The great Lombard duchy of Benevento, which had stood against the arms of Charlemagne, and comprised more than half the pre-

sent kingdom of Naples, had now fallen into decay, and was straitened by the Greeks in Apulia, and by the principalities of Capua and Salerno.

Q. What influence had the French monarchs in Italy?

A. Though princes of the Carlovingian line continued to reign in France, their character was too little distinguished to challenge the obedience of Italy, already separated by family partitions from the Transalpine nations.\*

Q. What Italian duke at last succeeded in getting crowned king of Italy?

A. Berenger, duke of Friuli; but being afterwards attacked by the duke of Spoleto, who had failed in his attempt to gain the French crown on the death of Charles the Fat, he was defeated, and was forced to take refuge in Germany.

Q. Guido, or Vido, duke of Spoleto, having defeated Berenger, or Berengarius, what followed?

A. Guido, duke of Spoleto, was crowned emperor at Rome, A. D. 891, by Pope Stephen the Fifth.

Q. What was the conduct of Arnolphus, emperor of Germany, who protected Berenger?

\* Transalpine nations were those countries on the side of the Alps not in Italy, the alpine mountains forming a boundary of separation.

A. At first he assisted Berenger, entered Italy, and succeeded in obtaining for him Pavia and part of his former territory, but he deserted him in the hope of obtaining Italy for himself, one of the two contending popes promising to bestow it if he would assist him in obtaining the papal dignity. Berenger, getting information of this treachery, escaped to Verona. After much civil war, Berenger defeated his enemies, and was again crowned king of Italy, but assassinated after reigning some years.

Q. What Tartarian tribe invaded the north of Italy, but afterwards, becoming converted to Christianity, settled into the kingdom of Hungary?

A. The Huns desolated Lombardy in the north, while the southern coasts were infested by the Saracens, then masters of Sicily. Italy thus beset, and seeing no way to become extricated from these difficulties, applied for assistance to Otho the First, king of Germany.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

*From the dominion of the Emperor Otho, (of Germany,) in Italy, to the reign of the German Emperor Maximilian. The corrupt state of the Roman See to the Conquest and Settlement of the Normans in the South of Italy.*

Q. DID Italy continue under the dominion of the kings of France?

A. No : Germany becoming the more powerful country, the Italians called in the assistance of the Germans against the Hungarians, who were defeated, and Berenger the Second, the reigning sovereign of Italy, submitted to hold the kingdom as a fief of Otho the First, king of Germany.

Q. But before taking leave of France, what king was the last of the weak posterity of Charlemagne, the conqueror of Lombardy?

A. Lewis the Fifth, called the Slothful, was the last of the Carlovingian race : at his death Hugh Capet, a powerful noble, lord of Champagne and Picardy, usurped the throne of France, and founded the third race of French monarchs, known as the Capet race. But the French had for a long time been losing their influence in Italy.

**Q.** What became of Berenger the Second ?

**A.** New disturbances arising, the powerful Otho deposed him, and received from the hands of Pope John the Twelfth the imperial dignity, which had been suspended nearly forty years.

**Q.** To what circumstance did the German emperor Otho owe his ascendancy in Italy ?

**A.** To the disorders of the papacy, the worldly advantages of popery causing the papal chair to be a matter of constant dispute.

**Q.** In that age of corruption, when the lives of too many of those who professed Christianity would have disgraced Pagans, what sometimes occurred ?

**A.** It was not unusual to put up the pope-dom for sale. Pope Benedict the Eighth and Pope John the Nineteenth, two brothers, publicly bought the chair of St. Peter one after the other ; and, in order to keep it in the family, it was afterwards purchased by their friends for Benedict the Ninth, a child of twelve years of age.—The chair of St. Peter means the office of pope.

**Q.** What other historical fact is recorded of the corrupt character of the Roman Christians ; for had there been genuine Christianity amongst the people, the vices of the head of the church would have been checked ?

**A.** Three popes, each pretending regular election and equal right, agreed first to divide

the revenues between them, and afterwards sold all their shares to a fourth.

Q. But, deplorable as was the low state of Christianity in Rome, and indeed throughout Christendom, yet were there not Christians found who adhered to the truth?

A. Yes: the decrees of the councils of Frankfort and Pavia, against the worship of images, had not in all parts lost the whole of their force, and many of the doctrines contrary to the Gospel were openly opposed; thus true religion existed, although confined to the few.

Q. What English writer wrote against many of the errors of the church of Rome?

A. Much as ignorance prevailed in England, Alfric distinguished himself by his writings, and a homily (or lecture) for Easter, composed by him, was read in all the churches.

Q. Was the Bible read in England, notwithstanding it was a book forbidden by the pope?

A. Yes; several counties for some time retained the use of the Scriptures in the vulgar tongue, that is, in the language commonly spoken and understood. In England, the Scriptures were translated into Saxon by the command of Athelstan. In England, as elsewhere, the celibacy of the clergy was condemned.

Q. What further opposition was made to the church of Rome in France?



A. In a summary of Christian faith and practice, published by a council A. D. 909, at Trosly, near Soissons, neither a belief in the supremacy of the pope, nor in the sacrifice of the mass, nor in purgatory, nor in additional sacraments, nor in the duty of confession to a priest, nor of worshipping created beings, obtains a place.

Q. What did Arnulphus, bishop of Orleans, (in France,) in a council held in the city of Rheims, A. D. 991, affirm regarding the Roman pontiff?

A. That a pope, if he acted amiss, was liable to the censures of the church; and after intimating that John the Fifteenth, the reigning pontiff, was destitute of charity, pronounced him to be, in that case, "Antichrist, sitting in the temple of God, and shewing himself that he is God."

Q. What emperor, after the time of Charlemagne of France, obtained the greatest power over Italy and the pope?

A. Otho the Great, king of Germany, and his successors for a century, asserted their sovereignty over Italy and the popedom, though with a constant resistance on the part of the Romans, and a general repugnance of the pope, when once established.

Q. How did Otho the Great govern in Italy?

A. With much prudence and vigour. Most

of the Lombard princes acquiesced, without apparent repugnance, in the new German government; but the citizens of Lombardy were still better satisfied with a change that insured a more tranquil and regular administration than they had experienced under the preceding kings

Q. Notwithstanding the obscurity which spreads over the internal government of Rome, from the recovery of Italy, by Belisarius, to the end of the eleventh century, what shadow of former greatness remained?

A. Amidst the perpetual disorders of that dreary period are faintly distinguished the names of senate, consuls, and tribunes, forming the domestic magistracy of Rome. The institutions of Rome were republican, yet the Roman people, with extraordinary contrast, allowed a despotic church government. In this respect there is great similarity in the spirit of ancient and modern Rome—a republic, with a supreme Pagan pontiff, existing in the old Roman age; a republic, with a supreme Christian pontiff, ruling in modern times.

Q. In what way did the Romans shew their dislike of the German power?

A. By rebelling against the emperors whenever they were absent in Germany, with the pope at their head, especially during the minority of Otho the Third.

Q. How did Otho the Third punish the

Romans when he became a man and capable of defending himself?

A. He besieged and took the city of Rome, crushing all resistance by his severity, and especially by the execution of the consul, Crescentius, a leader of the popular faction, to whose instigation the disorders of Rome were principally ascribed.

Q. Otho the Third dying without children, the compact between Italy and the German emperors of the house of Saxony was determined. Who then became king of Italy?

A. Andoin, marquis of Ivrea, was elected king of Italy, but displeasing the Lombard princes and bishops, they invited Henry the Second (the new king of Germany), to reign over them.

Q. What became of Andoin, the elected king of Italy?

A. Andoin was deserted by most of the Italians, but retained his former subjects in Piedmont. He disputed the crown for many years with Henry, who was very seldom in Italy, and the Lombards became more and more obliged to protect themselves.

Q. What city was burnt in a tumult, which caused the Italians to retain great animosity towards the German sovereign?

A. The city of Pavia, to the north of Italy, was burnt to the ground, and the Italians were

more than ever desirous of breaking their connexion with Germany.

Q. What was a rule regarding the elected king of Germany?

A. That he could not assume the title of Roman emperor until his coronation by the pope.

Q. What was the consequence?

A. The lesser title of king of the Romans was invented as an approach to the imperial dignity.

Q. When was the coronation of the German emperors at Rome dispensed with altogether?

A. According as kings and emperors had power to resist the pope, they freed themselves from the usurpation of his claims; and Italy being subject to the German empire, when Maximilian became emperor of Germany, the coronation at Rome was dispensed with, and the title of emperor was taken immediately after the election.

Q. Name the Italian duchies, or rather republics, established on the Mediterranean coast, to the south of Italy.

A. Naples, Gæta, and Amalfi, which acknowledged the Greek empire.

Q. What Lombard principalities had greatly declined in their former splendour?

A. Benevento, Salerno, and Capua, situated to the south of Italy.

Q. What foreign pilgrims from Normandy

assisted a Lombard prince of Salerno against the Saracens who had invaded his territories?

A. The Normans, an adventurous people, after becoming Christians, visited the shrines, (places held by the ignorant in religious reverence,) both in Italy and the Holy Land, and chancing to be in Italy when the Saracens landed in the south, assisted the prince of Salerno in repulsing them.

Q. This successful exploit of the Normans inducing other Norman adventurers, in the hope of gain, to visit Italy, what little city did they found?

A. They founded the little city of Aversa, near Capua, and were employed by the Greeks against the Saracens of Sicily.

Q. Their employers proving ungrateful for the services they had rendered, in what way did the Normans revenge themselves?

A. By a sudden invasion of Apulia. This province, to the south of Italy, was quickly subdued, and divided between twelve Norman counts.

Q. It must have been remarked some portion of the south of Italy had always acknowledged the eastern or Greek emperors; what finally ended the eastern dominion in Italy?

A. The Norman count, Robert Guiscard, acquired the sovereignty; and, adding Calabria to his conquests, put an end to the long dominion of the eastern emperors in Italy, A.D. 1057.

**Q.** What other conquests did the Norman, Robert Guiscard, make?

**A.** He reduced the principalities of Salerno and Benevento, in the latter instance sharing the spoil with the pope, who took the city to himself, while Robert retained the rest of the territory.

**Q.** What have you to remark concerning the successes of the Normans in Italy, and the popes of Rome?

**A.** The popes at first looked on the Normans unfavourably, but soon finding these adventurers useful, they gladly employed them.

**Q.** Had the Normans any right to possessions in Italy?

**A.** Not any beyond that of conquest; and the Normans, therefore, gladly (on having their illegal claims confirmed by the pope,) consented to hold their conquests tributary to Rome.

**Q.** What kingdom of Italy, from the time of its Norman conquest, has never ceased to pay a feudal acknowledgment to the chair of St. Peter, or, in other words, to the pope?

**A.** The kingdom of Naples, situated to the south of Italy. It was by similar means, and by the profound art and cunning of worldly wisdom, but most opposed to the divine doctrine of Christianity, that the papal see became firmly established, and which the facts of history abundantly prove.

**Q.** When did the Latin tongue become a dead

language (that is, when had it ceased to be spoken) in Italy?

A. The final settlement of barbarous nations completed the ruin of literature, and the Latin language was so changed, it is said by a writer of Charlemagne's age, that scarcely any part of it was popularly known. Although the ancient Romans left traces of their language in countries they had conquered, yet it became gradually (after the destruction of the western empire) a language, even in Italy, confined to books, and to the few who made it a study.

Q. When is there mention of a language spoken in Italy distinct from the Latin, which language was confined to the service of the church?

A. It is said, in the epitaph of Pope Gregory the Fifth, who died A.D. 999, that he instructed the people in three dialects, the Frankish, (or German,) the Vulgar, and the Latin.

Q. What language is spoken in Italy?

A. The Italian, which dates its commencement with the revival of learning.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*The Doge of Venice takes the title of Duke of Dalmatia. The Lombard cities league together. Quarrels between the Popes and the Emperors of Germany. The Normans expelled from Naples by the German Emperor, Henry the Sixth.*

Q. WHAT was the state of Italy after the Normans had settled in it?

A. Excepting the territory of popedom, since called the ecclesiastical states, or states of the church, the principalities of the independent nobles, and the cities of Genoa and Venice, the greatest part of Italy was in possession of the Normans.

Q. Although Italy was thus divided amongst different interests, to what more powerful country was it subject?

A. To Germany; and the long contentions between the emperors and the popes form a very prominent part of the history of Italy in the early feature of the middle ages.

Q. What was the prevailing passion over Europe in this half-civilized age?

A. Pilgrimage and chivalrous enterprise, love of the marvellous, and the most childish belief in the pretended miracles of the church of Rome.



The trials by ordeal are a sad proof how much the mind needed instruction.

Q. What title was now assumed by the reigning duke of the republic of Venice?

A. The Doge (or Duke) of Venice assumed the title of Duke of Dalmatia, of which the republic had acquired the property by conquest, as well as of Istria, Spalatro, Ragusa, and Narenza.

Q. What occasioned the rise and wealth of the Italian republics of Genoa and Venice?

A. Those cities rose to great opulence by commerce, which is the wealth of nations. Venice traded with the East long before Genoa was of importance; their merchants were said to be princes, and the fine palaces which still adorn those cities denote their former prosperity. Venice and Genoa are still trading cities, but not to the extent of former times.

Q. What were the Lombard cities to the north of Italy now gradually forming into?

A. Into republican governments: at length a union was secretly agreed on to oppose the German power in Italy, and this union of cities for mutual defence is known as the famous "Lombard League," the terms of which were settled in a general diet, or meeting.

Q. What three great events in Italian history are to be remembered, as happening from about the middle of the eleventh to the middle of the twelfth century?

A. The struggle between the German emperors and the popes for ecclesiastical investitures, the establishment of the Norman kingdom in Naples, and the formation of distinct and nearly independent republics among the cities of Lombardy.

Q. Between the reigns of what German emperors did these events happen?

A. During the period between Conrad of Franconia, and Frederic Barbarossa, emperors of Germany.

Q. What have you to remark concerning Europe, from the tenth to the twelfth century?

A. Even Roman Catholic writers declare it to be an age surpassing all others in vice and ignorance. Genebrand speaks of it as distinguished, in conjunction with half of the next century, for producing nearly fifty popes more like to apostates than apostles.

Q. The popes being in the zenith of their power, what presumptuous titles did they add to their usurpations?

A. The appellation of "Masters of the World," and "Universal Fathers." Leo the Ninth, A.D. 1048, asserted a right of distributing and taking away kingdoms, and of being temporal as well as spiritual sovereign of the world.

Q. But what pope is particularly celebrated for his ambitious love of universal power?

A. Gregory the Seventh, called Hildebrand, elected pope A.D. 1073. He succeeded in subjecting the whole western world to a uniform reception of the Roman ceremonies and forms of worship, and ordered the religious service in all countries to be read in Latin, which language had become unknown except to the priests, and they for the most part could scarcely read it. This practice of people praying in a language not understood, was directly opposed to the Gospel, which most especially enjoins that prayer is to be made in the spirit, but with the understanding also.

Q. Gregory the Seventh continuing to pursue a steady plan of rendering all sovereigns his tributary vassals, inform me what was his success.

A. Monasteries and convents, with the wealth attached to them, and the thousands of nuns, monks, and friars, occupying a large portion of every country, added to the influence the priests obtained over the minds of an ignorant and superstitious people, who were taught implicit obedience to the pope's orders. Gregory boldly claimed kingdoms as his right, asserting Saxony to be a feudal tenure under the Roman see.

Q. What did he say to Philip, king of France?

A. That his kingdom, no less than his soul, was under the dominion of St. Peter; in other

words, of his pretended successor, the Roman pontiff.

Q. What did he order William of Normandy to do when he was about to invade England?

A. He ordered him to do homage for that kingdom, but William, on becoming king of England, paid the tax of money, called Peter's pence, but the demanded homage was sternly refused.

Q. What did Gregory the Seventh claim from the Christian kingdoms, forming a league against the Moors in Spain?

A. He unjustifiably asserted (probably from the Romans having once conquered Spain, but it was no longer theirs,) that Spain had always belonged to the papal see, and demanded tribute, which was paid, his power being too formidable to be opposed.

Q. What other kingdoms did this rapacious pope endeavour to annex to Rome?

A. He openly exhorted the kings of Hungary and Denmark, and the princes of Germany, to surrender their territories to the apostle Peter, and to hold them as dependencies to Rome.

Q. What prince of Russia did this notorious pope induce to surrender his kingdom?

A. Demetrius, son of the king of the Russians, was induced to come to Rome, and to give up to Gregory the territory he was to inherit from his father.

Q. On what terms did he raise the duke of Croatia to the regal title?

A. Upon the terms of his paying an annual tribute to Rome.

Q. After deposing Basislaus the Second, king of Poland, what did he forbid?

A. He prohibited the nobles and clergy of Poland from electing a new king without his consent.

Q. What grants did Gregory the Seventh induce the princess Matilda, niece to the emperor of Germany, Henry the Third, to give up to Rome?

A. He engaged the princess Matilda to make a gift of her great Italian domains, and other possessions, to the see of Rome.

Q. Who did the princess Matilda marry?

A. Godfrey, duke of Spoleto, and Guelph, duke of Bavaria; she was heiress of Tuscany and Mantua; she possessed also Parma, Placentia, Ferrara, Modena, Verona, Viturbo, and part of Orvieto, part of Umbria, and the Marquisate of Ancona. This powerful princess, on becoming a widow, sided with the pope against Henry the Fourth of Germany.

Q. Of what privilege did the pope deprive the emperors of Germany, who alone dared the dangerous attempt of checking the usurpations of the papal see?

A. That of the privilege of ratifying the election of the Roman pontiff.

Q. Henry the Fourth opposing Pope Gregory in various claims regarding the disposal of bishoprics, called ecclesiastical investitures, what was the consequence?

A. Pope Gregory roused some of the disaffected German princes to arms in his cause, and Henry was deposed.

Q. Describe the humiliating manner in which Henry the Fourth sued to the pope for pardon?

A. The pope obliged the deposed king to pass three days in the depth of winter in the open air, scarcely covered, with his feet and head bare, at the papal threshold, waiting for absolution. The secret of the pope's power was the ease with which he could, under the mask of religion, incite subjects to rebellion; and it was this which made monarchs tremble and bow to him through fear.

Q. Notwithstanding this abasement, what king did the pope appoint in the stead of Henry?

A. Rodolph; but he dying soon after, the affairs of Henry revived, and another pope was elected in opposition to Gregory; and thus two hostile popes agitated Europe.

Q. In the many contests between the emperors of Germany and the popes, which had generally the advantage?

A. The popes; they having greater influ-

ence amongst all classes of people than the lawful sovereign, the monastic orders forming a considerable body of popish partisans in every country.

Q. Name some of the indignities different emperors of Germany submitted to during these disputes, and which shew the tyranny and insolence of the popes.

A. Urban the Second, successor of Gregory, prompted the two sons of Henry the Fourth to rebel against their father, and his misfortunes terminated in his imprisonment and death. Frederick the First (Barbarossa) refusing to pay homage to Pope Alexander the Third, was at length compelled to kiss his feet in submission, and to give up a considerable portion of territory.

Q. What contemptuous treatment did Henry the Sixth, emperor of Germany, meet with from the pope?

A. Pope Celestinus kicked off the imperial crown from the head of Henry the Sixth, while he was doing him homage on his knees, but made amends for this insolence by the gift of Naples and Sicily. Such acts sufficiently shew what supreme power the popes possessed over kingdoms, and how wanting they were in a Christian spirit in the exercise of it.

Q. But Naples and Sicily having been given by former popes to the Normans, how came they to be expelled?

A. By the same right as the Normans had acquired them,—that of conquest. Henry of Germany defeated the Normans, and their territories became an appanage or a dependency to the German empire.

Q. When emperors could submit to be treated with every indignity, the insolence of the popes is scarcely to be wondered at; on what condition was Henry allowed to supplant the Normans?

A. On condition of holding his Italian conquests tributary to the pope. A. D. 1194.

Q. What style of writing was much admired besides religious compositions of the lives of saints and martyrs?

A. Romances; so termed from the Romance language, a mixture of the Frank and Latin, in which they were written.

Q. When did this style of writing appear, and what were the usual subjects which it narrated?

A. Romances appeared about the middle of the twelfth century, the period of the second crusade, when the passion for adventure and romantic love was very great, and romances were extravagant stories of chivalrous deeds.



## CHAPTER XXXIV.

*Continued contests of the Emperors of Germany with the Popes. The Lombard cities form two parties; the faction of the Guelfs and Ghibelins in Italy; to the success of the Guelf, and defeat of the Ghibelin party.*

Q. WHAT are the leading events in Italy from the time of Frederick Barbarossa, duke of Swabia, who became emperor of Germany A. D. 1152, to the time of Conrad the Fourth, also of the house of Swabia, A. D. 1254 ?

A. The interval forms a new period of about a century, distinguished by the victorious struggle of the Lombard and other Italian cities for independence; by the final establishment of a temporal sovereignty over the middle provinces of Italy by the popes; and by the union of the kingdom of Naples to the house of Swabia.

Q. What took place at the peace of Constance, after Frederick had been defeated at the battle of Legnano, to the north of Italy ?

A. The famous peace of Constance, A. D. 1183, established the Lombard republics in real independence.

Q. What advantage did Pope Innocent the Third obtain after the death of Frederick, during the civil wars in Germany ?

A. Civil war preventing either party from entering Italy, and occasioning the imperial dignity to be vacant for several years, those Italian cities, which are now within the ecclesiastical states, placed themselves under the protection of Pope Innocent the Third, who, taking advantage of the opportunity, compelled the Prefect of Rome to swear allegiance to the Papal See, which put an end to the imperial supremacy over that city.

Q. What wars, for the purpose of rescuing Jerusalem from the Turks, were encouraged by the popes, and set on foot by Peter the Hermit?

A. The crusades, which induced the leading powers of Europe, at different times, to embark for the Holy Land. The crusades continued from A. D. 1095, headed by Peter the Hermit, to the time of Lewis the Ninth of France, A. D. 1248, when, after the defeat at the siege of Acre, the Christians abandoned further attempts of possessing Jerusalem, and quitted the country.

Q. We are still pursuing an account of the dark ages; what did St. Bernard, a Roman Catholic writer and supporter of popery, say concerning the corruption of Christianity introduced by the popes?

A. "The popes," said he, "call themselves the ministers of Christ, and they serve anti-Christ. The beast of the Revelations, to whom was given a mouth speaking blasphemies, and power to make war with the saints, seizes the

chair of St. Peter." Two popes were then contending for the Papal See.

Q. What other celebrated writer lived at this time, and opposed St. Bernard?

A. Abelard, a man of great learning: his love for a lady of the name of Heloise was the cause of much trouble; it diverted his mind from study, for being a priest, he could not marry her. His enemies accused him of heresy; but he had many followers; the monastery of the Paraclete was built for him, of which he made a present to Heloise, who became the abbess. Abelard died at Chalons, in France, A. D. 1143.

Q. What Christians became distinguished for reproving the vices of the pope and priesthood, and dared to preach the necessity of a life according to the gospel?

A. The Albigenses; so called from Albi, a town in France; likewise the Vaudois, Vallenses, and Waldenses, from the valleys of Piedmont, situated in the Alps, to the north of Italy. Their history is most interesting, and the persecutions they suffered for the good cause of religion remind one of the virtue and piety of the early martyrs, in the time when the pagan pontiff was supreme in religious matters in Rome.

Q. What court was appointed by Pope Innocent the Third to punish heretics, as those Christians were called who were opposed to the church of Rome?

**A.** *The Inquisition*: a cruel court, composed of monks and friars, who put to torture and death whoever wished the Bible to be read, and exposed the errors of the Roman Catholic church. It was at first called a holy commission, and established at Toulouse. The word HOLY, it may be remarked, is often applied by Roman Christians to very *unholy* purposes; thus the Inquisition is called "Holy Tribunal;" likewise to the Popedom, "Holy See;" to the pope, "Holy Father." The last term, "Holy Father," claimed by man, is profanation, as it is a sacred expression due only to the Divine Being.

**Q.** What punishment did the pope inflict on the count of Toulouse, for objecting to the persecution of his people?

**A.** He was compelled by the pope to enter into a crusade (so called when religion is the occasion of the war) against his own vassals.

**Q.** What gave rise to the faction which so long agitated Italy, the Guelf and Ghibelin?

**A.** The wars of Frederic Barbarossa against Milan, which with other cities was opposed to the emperor; but part of Lombardy siding with him, the cities to the north of Italy split into two distinct factions, or political parties.

**Q.** About what year did this faction arise?

**A.** It first arose early in the twelfth century. These two leading parties caused civil dissension between the cities of Lombardy, and even spread

over Italy : the Guelfs supported the pope, and formed the church party ; the Ghibelin were on the imperial or German side.

Q. From what German families were these names derived ? inform me who were the Guelfs ?

A. The Guelfs took their name from a very illustrious German family, several of whom had been successively dukes of Bavaria in the tenth and eleventh centuries. The heiress of the last of these married a younger son of the house of Este, a noble family settled near Padua, and possessed of great estates in Italy, on each bank of the river Po.

Q. What English sovereigns are descended from the Guelf family ?

A. The royal line of Brunswick.

Q. Who were the German family of Ghibelins ?

A. The name of Ghibelin is derived from a village of Franconia, whence Conrad of Salic came. The Swabian emperors of Germany were in perpetual dispute with the popes.

Q. What was the state of the republics of Italy at the commencement of the thirteenth century ?

A. The republics of Italy, in the beginning of the thirteenth century, were so numerous and independent, and the revolutions in them so great, that it is a difficult matter to avoid on in following their history.

Q. The cities, however, may be divided into four clusters; name the first of these, which formed central Lombardy?

A. Milan, Cremona, Pavia, Brescia, Bergamo, Parma, Piacenza, Mantua, Lodi, Alexandria, and several others less distinguished. These were the original seats of Italian liberty, the great movers in the wars of the elder Frederick.

Q. Which party received support from Milan, the chief of this cluster of cities?

A. The Guelf, or church party; since the treaty of Constance, Milan had rendered Lodi and Pavia almost her subjects, and was in strict union with Brescia and Piacenza.

Q. But what two cities were unshaken supporters of the Ghibelin or German party?

A. Parma and Cremona.

Q. Name the second class of Lombard cities.

A. Four only are worth mentioning, Verona, Vicenza, Padua, and Treviso; these were in the Guelf interest, but many of their nobles supported the Ghibelins.

Q. What cities formed the third cluster of the Lombard republics?

A. The cities in Romagna, Bologna, Imola, Faenza, Ferrara, and several others. The Guelfs usually preponderated.

Q. Mention the fourth class of cities in

which the Guelf and Ghibelin parties had great contention.

A. The whole of Tuscany separated almost entirely from the politics of Lombardy and Romagna. Florence headed the Guelf cities in this province; Pisa, the Ghibelin.

Q. What act of usurpation, the most pompous in all the records of the church of Rome, and the greatest stretch of illegal power, did the pope commit towards Frederick the Second, emperor of Germany?

A. In hatred to the house of Swabia, the Roman pontiff convoked a council of one hundred and forty prelates, or priests, and when the question had been solemnly discussed, whether Frederick ought not to be deposed, the pope (of course the voice of those present) formally excommunicated Frederick, by which he deprived him of all his kingdoms, and absolved his subjects from their fidelity. This act of arrogance on the part of the pope excited rebellion and kept up constant war.

Q. After the death of Frederick the Second, A. D. 1250, what followed?

A. His son, Conrad, had a contest to maintain with Rome for every part of his inheritance, as well as for the imperial crown.

Q. In consequence of the implacable hatred of the popes towards the house of Swabia, for what part of his territory in Italy had Conrad next to fight?

A. Conrad was reduced to fight for the kingdom of Naples, the pope claiming that kingdom as forfeited to its feudal superior, the Holy See. Conrad, however, died prematurely, A. D. 1254, and was succeeded by his brother, Manfred.

Q. Did Manfred succeed in keeping the kingdom of Naples?

A. Manfred retained it by his bravery and address, in despite of the Roman pontiff, who was compelled to call in the assistance of a more powerful arm, and, accordingly, resolved to place Charles of Anjou, brother of the king of France, on the throne of Naples and Sicily.

Q. What was the result of the contest between Manfred and Charles of Anjou?

A. A battle decided the fate of Naples, A. D. 1266; Manfred was killed, and Charles of Anjou succeeded to the dominion of Naples.

Q. But what heir of the Fredericks remained?

A. Conradin, son of Conrad, who attempted to regain his inheritance, but falling into the hands of Charles was inhumanly put to death.

Q. What ended with the wicked execution of Conradin?

A. With the death of Conradin the male line of the house of Swabia was extinct, and the triumph of the Guelf party complete. But Constance, a daughter of Manfred, succeeded to the throne of Sicily.



Q. What dreadful occurrence took place in Sicily, which was of the Ghibelin party, and consequently opposed to Charles?

A. The Sicilians, enraged at the conduct of Charles of Anjou, brother to Lewis the Ninth of France, retaliated, by murdering every Frenchman in the island in one night. This shocking massacre, termed the *Sicilian Vespers*, happened on Easter Sunday, A. D. 1282.

Q. How came the Sicilians to take such an interest in the house of Swabia?

A. Constance, the daughter of Manfred, possessed Sicily in her father's right, although compelled to abandon Naples to Charles. The Sicilians therefore espoused the German cause, and Constance marrying Peter the Third of Spain, of the house of Arragon, secured to herself further protection.

Q. What war did the Sicilian Vespers give rise to?

A. To a war between France and Spain. The king of Arragon's fleet being near, the Sicilians called in his assistance, upon which he sailed for Palermo and accepted the Sicilian crown. Thus Charles of Anjou lost Sicily, but continued king of Naples.

Q. What more have you to say of the faction of the Guelfs and Ghibelins?

A. The distinction of Guelf and Ghibelin, had in fact almost lost its meaning after the death of Frederick the Second, but with the death of

Conradin the Ghibelin party it was completely extinguished, and the faction ceased.

Q. Were these terms used in Italy after the decline of the Ghibelin party?

A. The hatred of families and of individuals had been too great to subside easily, and the term Guelf and Ghibelin long continued to be distinguishing names, to denote the politics of two parties.—Politics mean particular opinions concerning the government of a country.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

*The cities of Lombardy cease to be Republics,  
The rise of the Italian family of the Visconti.  
The Pope quits Rome for Avignon, and returns  
after seventy years. War between Genoa and  
Venice. Dante, the father of Italian liter-  
ature.*

Q. AFTER the termination of the Guelf and Ghibelin faction, what change took place in the republican cities of Lombardy?

A. The Lombard cities became subject to lords.

Q. How was that brought about?

A. By force, or stratagem, or free consent, almost all the Lombard republics had already

fallen under the yoke of some leading citizen, who became the lord (signore) of his country.

Q. What Lombard city gave the first instance of a voluntary delegation of sovereignty?

A. The city of Ferrara placed itself under the lord of Este. Other cities following the example, at the latter end of the thirteenth century there were almost as many princes in the north of Italy as there had been free cities in the preceding age.

Q. What two great Italian families contended at Milan, which had long been much agitated by dissensions between the nobility and the people?

A. The people chose Martin Della Torre for lord, opposed by the Visconti, who succeeded in supplanting the Torriani family in Milan, and established that of Matteo Visconti in 1313.

Q. The term of Guelf and Ghibelin continuing to express a political party, (for or against the pope,) to which did the Visconti belong?

A. The Visconti were acknowledged heads of the Ghibelin party, which now revived in Italy. The Della Scala also maintained the credit of the same domination on the Guelf side between the Adige and the Adriatic, and had long been established as lords of Verona.

Q. What four other houses (a term applied to noble families) occupied the second rank?

A. Those of Este, at Ferrara and Modena;

of Scala, at Verona; of Carrara, at Padua; and that of Gonzaga, at Mantua, which continued to reign undisturbed till the eighteenth century.

**Q.** The powerful family of Visconti, in defiance of the excommunications of the popes, continuing to prosper, what further territory did they obtain?

**A.** The Visconti added city after city to the dominion of Milan, till at last it absorbed all the north of Italy.

**Q.** After the Visconti overpowered the great family of Scala, what further cities submitted to him?

**A.** No power intervened, from Vercelli, in Piedmont, to Feltre and Belluno; while the free cities of Tuscany, Pisa, Siena, Perugia, and even Bologna, voluntarily owned the Visconti for their master.

**Q.** What marriages into the royal houses of England and France, completed the elevation of the Visconti family?

**A.** Galeazzo Visconti purchased, with 100,000 florins, a daughter of France for his son; a few years after, Lionel, duke of Clarence, second son of Edward the Third of England, married Galeazzo's daughter; and the union of Valentine, daughter of Gian Galeazzo, with the duke of Orleans, in 1389, served to transmit a claim in her descendants to the throne of France.

**Q.** We will now pause on the politics of the Lombard cities, to inquire what was the Bull so famous (for the arrogance of its style) issued by Pope Boniface the Eighth ?

**A.** The pope and the king of France quarrelled ; when Boniface the Eighth, in a memorable bull, declared, " that the successor of St. Peter ruled the earth, by the divine right, with the temporal sword, no less than the church with the spiritual ; and that every man who presumed to question this doctrine was excluded from the possibility of salvation."

**Q.** What pope did Philip the Fair, of France, by his manœuvres, get elected to the papal chair on its becoming vacant ?

**A.** Clement the Fifth, a French prelate, who, A.D. 1305, at the desire of the king, transferred the papal residence to Avignon, where it continued seventy years, which was denominated by the Italians the Babylonian captivity.

**Q.** What was the condition of Rome after the removal of the pope to France ?

**A.** The Roman nobility were engaged in perpetual war with each other. Not content with their own fortified palaces in Rome, they turned the monuments of antiquity into strong holds ; not even the downfall of the Western empire was so fatal to its capital as the feuds of the Orsini and Colonna families.

**Q.** What obscure man, in the midst of this tumult and confusion, conceived the project of

restoring Rome not only to good order, but to its ancient greatness?

A. Nicola di Rienzi: he harangued both the nobles and people with complete success; and all parties submitting to his power, he was placed at the head of a new government, with the title of Tribune, and with almost unlimited power.

Q. Did the pope approve of the authority given to Rienzi, who was regarded as the destined restorer of Rome and Italy?

A. Though the court at Avignon could not approve, yet it temporized enough not directly to oppose it.

Q. What effect had this extraordinary elevation on the character of Rienzi?

A. This sudden exaltation intoxicated his understanding, and totally unfitted him for so elevated a condition. After experiencing many reverses, Rienzi was killed in an insurrection.

Q. The popes finding they lost ground in Italy by remaining in France, resolved to return; in what year did the pope again settle in Rome?

A. In the year 1377 the pope returned to Rome, and the city again submitted to his authority.

Q. What formidable confederacy was now formed against Venice?

A. Venice had provoked many enemies besides Genoa: Francis Carrara, signor of

Padua, and the king of Hungary, were leaders of the opposition.

Q. Who were admirals of the contending fleets?

A. Pietro Doria was admiral of the Genoese, and Vittor Pisani of the Venetian.

Q. Notwithstanding the exertions of the Doge Contarini, the fall of Venice appeared to be so near, that the senate even deliberated on transporting the seat of their liberty to Candia; what happened?

A. Carlo Zeno, a Venetian admiral, quite accidentally returned from the Levant with eighteen galleys and a store of provisions. This unexpected assistance saved Venice; and the Genoese were defeated.

Q. The duke of Savoy bringing about a reconciliation, how was it concluded?

A. By the peace of Turin, when Venice surrendered most of her territorial possessions to the king of Hungary.

Q. Amongst the nobility of Genoa, (the city began to decline from this time,) which four families were most distinguished?

A. The Grimaldi, Fieschi, Doria; and Spinola: the two former of Guelf politics; the latter, adherents of the empire.

Q. What only instance occurred of a Doge of Venice being tempted to betray the freedom of the republic by aiming at sovereign power?

A. Marin Falieri formed a conspiracy for

that purpose at Venice, A. D. 1353 ; but on its being discovered, he confessed his guilt, and the aristocracy (or nobles) of Venice ordered his execution in the ducal palace.

Q. Who were the Troubadours ?

A. The early poets of Italy, who celebrated in song the exploits of chivalry and the praise of fair ladies.

Q. To what foreigner and enemy did Italy owe the beginning of her national literature ?

A. To Frederick the Second, emperor of Germany : he both encouraged the art and cultivated it : among the very first essays of Italian verse we find his productions, and those of his chancellor, Piero Delle Vigne.

Q. There is much obscurity in the rise of the Italian language, but inform me who were the earliest poets in Italy ?

A. The Tuscan poets were the first to awake to the beauties of their native tongue, refined from the impurities of the rude dialects commonly spoken.

Q. Who was the first historian, and nearly the first prose writer, in Italy ?

A. Ricordano Malespini : he has left memorials of the Florentine republic down to the year A. D. 1281, which, after his death, was continued, by Giachetto Malespini, to A. D. 1286.

Q. In the next age, what writer is considered



the father of Italian poetry, and the first name in the literature of the middle ages ?

A. Dante (or Durante) Alighieri, who was born at Florence, where he filled the office of the priori, or chief magistrate. Dante was of the Guelf politics, but his own party quarrelling, they split into two factions, the Bianchi and the Neri, and Dante was banished.

Q. On being banished from Florence, Dante changed his party ; what became of him ?

A. In his adversity he changed to the Ghibelin or imperial interests, and tasted, in his own language, the bitterness of another's bread. He died in exile, at Ravenna, A. D. 1321.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

*War between Genoa and Pisa. Count Ugolino, a Pisan noble, starved to death. Wickliff writes against the Church of Rome. Tyranny of the Guelf party in Florence. Pisa is sold to Florence. Salvestro de Medici. Michael di Lando banished from Florence.*

Q. GENOA and Venice have been noticed ; what other city soon became of importance, situated not many miles from the port of Leghorn ?

A. Pisa, which had been distinguished as a commercial city ever since the age of the Ottos. From her port of Leghorn and that of Genoa,

the earliest naval armaments of the western nations were fitted out against the Saracen corsairs, who infested the Mediterranean.

Q. What improvements particularly mark the prosperous era of the Pisans ?

A. Pisa was the first Italian city that took a pride in architectural magnificence.

Q. What ancient buildings deserve particular notice at Pisa, and are visited by travellers at the present day ?

A. The cathedral, built in the eleventh century ; the baptistery ; the famous leaning tower, or belfry ; and the arcades, which surround the Campo Santo, or cemetery of Pisa, are of the twelfth, or at latest of the thirteenth, century, and remain in perfect preservation.

Q. Although the rival cities of Genoa and Pisa remained friends longer than could have been expected, yet ancient dissensions arose ; to what have their quarrels been compared ?

A. The naval contests between Genoa and Pisa, though much longer protracted, resemble the warfare of Carthage and Rome in the first Punic war.

Q. What naval action occasioned the complete defeat of the Pisans ?

A. In one fatal action, off the little isle of Meloria, the whole naval fleet of Pisa was destroyed.

Q. What Pisan noble was said purposely to

have lost the battle, and prevented the ransom of the captives to secure his power?

A. Count Ugolino, and the accusations against him being credited, he was condemned, together with his young family, to be starved to death in prison. This shocking cruelty has often been made the subject of pathetic illustration by poetry and painting.

Q. In what manner did Pisa become attached to Florence?

A. Pisa was included in the acquisitions of Gian Galeazzo Visconti; and at his death, one of his family seized the dominion, and finally the Florentines purchased, for 400,000 florins, a rival and once equal city.

Q. Amongst the foreigners who entered into the service of the Italian states, what Englishman is particularly distinguished?

A. Sir John Hawkwood, who was bred a tailor. This very eminent man had served in the wars of Edward the Third, of England, who conferred on him the honour of knighthood.

Q. For what is the name of Sir John Hawkwood worthy to be remembered?

A. As that of the first distinguished commander who had appeared in Europe since the destruction of the Roman empire,

Q. In what services was he engaged in Italy?

A. For thirty years he was continually engaged in the service of the Visconti, of the pope,

or of the Florentines, to whom he devoted himself with more steadiness than he had shewn in his first campaigns, A. D. 1379.

Q. How did the Florentine republic at his death testify their gratitude ?

A. By a public funeral and a monument to his memory.

Q. What discovery was made, which soon completely changed the mode of warfare ?

A. The application of gunpowder in warfare. It was introduced, through the means of the Saracens, into Europe, and is noticed by Arabic writers ; but it was not in use, or indeed known, except to philosophers, till the fourteenth century.

Q. What contentions were agitating the Roman church ?

A. On the death of Gregory the Eleventh, A. D. 1378, Urban the Sixth was chosen to succeed him ; but a party of cardinals repenting the choice, raised a rival, Clement the Seventh, to the pontificate.

Q. What was this great quarrel of the contending popes called ?

A. *The great schism of the West*. It divided the western church for fifty years.

Q. What other division was agitating the church of Rome ?

A. The quarrels of the Dominican and the Franciscan friars. The formidable and ini-

quidus tribunal of the Inquisition, whose peculiar office it was to persecute, enabled the Dominicans to proceed to the most cruel revenge on their opponents, and numbers of Franciscans perished at the stake, or, in other words, were burnt to death.

Q. What opposition did the church of Rome experience, notwithstanding its efforts to keep people in ignorance?

A. The vices and errors of the Roman church, and its glaring departure from the gospel of Christ, at length opened the eyes of several of their own body, and popery began to have many opponents; the most formidable of whom was Wicliff, an Englishman, born A. D. 1324.

Q. What most valuable work did Wicliff produce?

A. The first complete translation of the Bible which had ever appeared in the English tongue. The pope issued no less than five bulls against Wicliff, but he was protected by the house of Lancaster, in England. After much persecution, Wicliff died at Lutterworth, A. D. 1384.

Q. What have you to remark concerning the events of the fourteenth century?

A. That the age of darkness was passing away, a love of knowledge and inquiry was evidently progressing in Europe, and the corruptions of the Roman church, exposed by Wicliff,

awakened the mind to reflection and a desire to read the Bible, which continued to increase, notwithstanding the persecuting efforts of the Romish church.

Q. What, besides the disturbed state of the early ages from frequent barbarous invasions, caused the extinction of learning in Italy?

A. The entire neglect of the study of ancient authors, and the Latin language ceasing to be spoken. Greek was unknown, and true Christianity almost lost sight of: and the slavery of ignorance was the consequence.

Q. What ages are properly called the dark ages, and when did learning begin to advance?

A. The darkest period was from the sixth to the eleventh century: when so stupidly bigoted was Christendom, that the study of Rome's greatest authors, especially her poets, was almost forbidden. A change took place in the course of the twelfth century, when learning began to make some progress, and happily continued to advance.

Q. What further step was made in learning in the thirteenth century?

A. There seems to have been some decline of classical literature, in consequence probably of the scholastic philosophy being more attended to; but in the fourteenth century an ardent zeal for the restoration of ancient learning displayed itself.

**Q.** What was a branch of trade in monasteries at this time?

**A.** The copying of books, which manuscripts, as might be supposed, were sold at a high price.

**Q.** When was the university of Bologna established?

**A.** As far back as the eleventh century; but early in the twelfth the study of Roman law brought a throng of scholars round the chair of its professors.

**Q.** When was a knowledge of the Greek authors revived in Italy?

**A.** In the fourteenth century, Leontius Pilatus, a Greek native of Thessalonica, was encouraged by Bocaccio, an Italian poet, to give public lectures on Homer, at Florence. The fall of the Eastern Empire, conquered by the Turks, A.D. 1445, occasioned the resort of Greeks into Italy, and revived the study of Grecian learning.

**Q.** What disturbances arose in Florence?

**A.** Feuds between the Bianchi and Neri families. Corso Donati, chief of the latter family, might represent the intrepid, ambitious character of a citizen noble of an Italian republic.

**Q.** Who were the popular nobles in Florence?

**A.** Florence had her plebeian nobles (popolani grandi) as well as Rome; the Peruzzi, the Ricci, the Albizi, the Medici, correspond to the Catos, the Pompeys, the Brutuses, and the Antonines of ancient times.

**Q.** What foreigner, in the employ of the Florentines, wished to usurp the government of Florence ?

**A.** Walter Brienni, duke of Athens, who was descended from one of the French crusaders, and had settled in Greece. He was appointed to the military command at Florence, which was united with domestic jurisdiction.

**Q.** How did the duke of Athens conduct the affairs of Florence ?

**A.** His excesses and tyranny rendering him obnoxious, the city was barricaded in all directions, and, after a contest of some duration, he consented to abdicate his signiory, and Florence recovered her liberty, but not her peace.

**Q.** What law did the Guelf party obtain to restrict the foreign artizans settled at Florence ?

**A.** Jealous of foreigners becoming members of corporations, a law was passed excluding from public trust all persons not being natives of the city or its territory.

**Q.** What further severe law was passed by the Guelfs ?

**A.** A law was passed, declaring every one whose ancestors at any time, since the year 1300, had been known Ghibelins, or who had not the reputation of sound Guelf principles, incapable of being elected to office.

**Q.** What was the government of Florence at this disturbed period ?

**A.** An oligarchy ; so called when the affairs



of a state are in the guidance of a few of the most powerful citizens.

Q. What continued hostility did the Guelfs manifest towards the Ghibelins?

A. A law was made that every person accepting office who should be convicted of Ghibelism, or of Ghibelin descent, upon testimony of public fame, became liable to punishment, capital or pecuniary, at the discretion of the priors. The imputation of Ghibelinism by this act of tyranny soon became a pretext for warning persons from office, and for gratifying personal revenge.

Q. What man of approved patriotism, and whose family had been of known Guelf principles, would not be warned from office?

A. Salvestro de Medici, who was appointed the gonfalonier of justice, in June, 1378.

Q. What was the consequence of Salvestro de Medici proposing to mitigate the severity of the law?

A. His proposal being rejected, a tumult took place, and many houses of the Guelfs were destroyed; a committee of magistrates at length were empowered to reform the state, and to regulate the trading companies, the dissensions regarding which was the great cause of the dispute.

Q. Another faction arising, what tradesman was elected gonfalonier?

A. Michael di Lando, a wool-carder, half dressed and without shoes, happening to hold the standard of justice, was promoted by the mob to the high office of gonfalonier, or signior, with authority to reform the city at his pleasure.

Q. What was the character of Lando, thus accidentally elevated at the caprice of the mob?

A. Fortunately Lando was a man of courage, moderation, and integrity, and he gave immediate proofs of these qualities, by making his office respected.

Q. Did Lando succeed in quelling the disturbances?

A. Lando restored tranquillity to Florence, and retired from the office of gonfalonier with the approbation of all historians.

Q. Who succeeded Lando in the office?

A. Another wool-comber; but wanting the intrinsic worth of Lando, his mean station created discontent, excited sedition, and a tumult ensued; the inferior tradesmen were benefited in the end.

Q. What three men of distinguished families who had been instigators of the revolution, became leaders at Florence?

A. Benedetto Alberti, Tomaso Strozzi, and Georgio Scali. After a short period of confusion, tranquillity was restored.

Q. What became of Michael di Lando?

A. He was banished from Florence by the aristocracy (nobles who now regained the ascen-

dency); a hard sentence for one who had exercised authority so blamelessly, and was more over known to be a man of worth: but party spirit too often throws merit in the shade.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

*The Angevin kings of Naples. Joanna of Naples. Ladislaus. Joanna the Second. Charles the Fourth crowned at Milan and at Rome. The Golden Bull. Termination of the dark and middle ages.*

Q. WHAT line of kings continued to reign in Naples?

A. The Angevin line, so called from being descended from the French house of Anjou.

Q. After the ruin of the German Swabian family, did the popes continue pleased with that of France?

A. The popes soon became as jealous of the French as they had been of the German influence, not finding the implicit obedience to the Papal See which had been expected.

Q. What territory besides that of Italy was possessed by the Angevin kings in France, which thereby enabled them to encroach on the Italian provinces in the north?

A. The Angevin kings were likewise sovereigns of Provence, in France, from whence they easily invaded Piedmont, and threatened the Milanese. Robert the Third of Naples, and of this line, almost openly aspired, like his grandfather, to a real sovereignty over all Italy.

Q. What queen of Naples was supposed to have murdered her husband ?

A. Joanna, married to Andrew, an Hungarian prince, who was murdered, on which Louis, his brother, invaded Naples, partly as an avenger and partly as a conqueror.

Q. What became of Queen Joan, or Joanna ?

A. She escaped from Naples with her second husband to Provence ; but after an investigation of the alleged murder by Pope Clement the Sixth, Joan was acquitted and returned to Naples, where she reigned peaceably for thirty years, not meddling, like her progenitors, in the general concerns of Italy.

Q. How many husbands had Joan of Naples ?

A. Joan, or Joanna, had four husbands. From having been suspected to have murdered the first, a stigma, deserved or not, rests on her character, which time does not efface. The ruins of her palace may still be seen at Naples.

Q. What Neapolitan king, with bold independence, opposed the pope ?

A. Ladislaus, who, although a feudal vassal to the pope, dared to seize upon Rome ; the disordered state of the Roman church being such,

that it gave him an opportunity of possessing himself of great part of the papal territory.

Q. What is singularly striking in this portion of the history of Italy?

A. To witness the power of the popes in subduing emperors and empires to the lowest distress and humiliation; the boundless and yet successful usurpations of the Papal See *abroad*; and to observe their authority and spiritual censures so often unheeded in Italy. The Visconti despised the thunders of Rome, and we even see Ladislaus, a tributary vassal, seizing upon Rome itself as his spoil.

Q. In what way may this independence of the states of Italy, and even on some occasions of the Roman people rising against the pope, be accounted for?

A. The papal power must be first viewed abroad. At one time, Rome possessed the half of England, and even a larger portion of other countries, under the name of church lands, which, being well cultivated and rich in wealthy monasteries and convents, gave the popes so preponderating an influence, that kings were sensible of the ease with which their subjects could be excited to rebellion, and therefore found it the safest policy to bow to the Papal See, either when conscious of inability to resist, or, after resistance, to submit, as the only chance of retaining any property at all; whereas Italy was parcelled out into a number of small states;

even cities were independent and republican in principle, and the property being so limited, the church could not get possession of any part without a severe struggle.

Q. Mention some of the contests the pope had to experience in Italy.

A. The kingdom of Lombardy was in constant warfare with Rome. The emperors of Germany maintained their opposition in the faction in which the Italian cities took part, the Ghibelins against the Guelfs; and then the Angevin kings of Naples, whom the popes themselves had aided to supplant the German, cared so little for the pope's authority as to entertain hopes of making themselves masters of all Italy.

Q. What further conquest was Ladislaus meditating when he died?

A. Ladislaus, king of Naples, was disposed to have carried his arms further north, and to have attacked the republic of Florence, if not the Lombard states of Italy, when death, the arrester of all human ambition, relieved Italy from further dread of his arms.

Q. Who succeeded Ladislaus to the throne of Naples?

A. Joanna the Second, an unworthy character; and the kingdom in her reign relapsed into that state of anarchy from which its late sovereign had rescued it.

Q. What powerful rival nobles governed the palace with unlimited sway?

A. Sforza Attendolo, great constable, and Sir Gianni Caraccioli. Sforza succeeded to the duchy of Milan. Joanna dying without children, the kingdom of Naples became a subject of contention between the Angevin succession and Spain.

Q. What was the government of Naples at the close of the fourteenth century?

A. It was altogether a feudal government. This had been introduced by the Norman Kings, and the system had rather strengthened than declined under the Angevin race.

Q. Had Italy succeeded in obtaining an entire independence of Germany?

A. The Italians never broke that almost invisible thread which connected them to Germany. The great civilians, and the much greater poets, of the fourteenth century taught Italy to consider the emperor as a dormant sovereign, to whom the various principalities and republics were subordinate, and during whose absence alone they had legitimate authority.

Q. In what year was Charles the Fourth, emperor of Germany, crowned king of Lombardy, at Milan?

A. Charles the Fourth assumed the imperial dignity A. D. 1347, and was first crowned at

Aix-la-Chapelle: afterwards at Milan, and he was a third time crowned at Rome.

Q. What great change did Charles the Fourth make in the Germanic body, by what is called the *Golden Bull*?

A. He divided the empire into *circles*, and settled the mode of electing future emperors,—a rule of succession which is still continued. By this bull, or decree, established at the diet of Neuremburgh, the number of electors was reduced to seven, and the hereditary offices of the state were settled on them.

Q. Why was it called the Golden Bull?

A. Because there was a gold seal fastened to the vellum on which it was written, representing the emperor on one side and the Capitol of Rome on the other.

Q. After the dissolution of the Germanic body, what title did the emperors of Germany assume?

A. That of emperors of Austria; from a conquered province of Austria, in Bohemia, which Rodolph of Hapsburgh anciently bestowed on his son Albert, with the title of duke, through which duke of Austria a long line of German emperors have descended, and an emperor of that house continues to reign at the present day. Henceforth, when the Austrian influence is noticed in Italy, it must be remembered it continues to be German also.

Q. What celebrated Doge ruled in Venice?



A. Francesco Foscari, who governed the republic with advantage for thirty-four years: his son died in exile, and he was obliged to resign his office of Doge. Foscari died of grief shortly after his deposition.

Q. When do the middle ages terminate?

A. Historians consider those ages, called middle ages, to end at various great political events which occurred from the fifteenth to the sixteenth century; such as the destruction of the Eastern empire by the Turks; the invention of printing; the Reformation; the discovery of America; Charles the Eighth, of France, invading Italy, &c.

Q. What difference is there between the *dark* and the *middle* ages?

A. They are usually considered to mean the same period, expressing that interval from the sixth to the fifteenth century, when Europe was in a deplorable state of ignorance and superstition: the four centuries, however, immediately prior to the sixteenth are properly the middle ages, as the human mind had been progressively improving, and though but slowly, still the advance was considerable, compared with the dreary gloom of preceding years.

Q. What excited the attention of Roman Christians in different parts of Europe?

A. The flagrant misconduct of the popes and the clergy, also of various Roman Catholic

religious orders, made Christians in many places desirous that some reform should take place.

Q. But what followed every attempt to bring that about?

A. Decided opposition from the popes ; and the Inquisition persecuted to death whoever were bold enough to desire a better state of things.

Q. What German reformer suffered martyrdom for the cause of religion, and was burnt at Cologne, A. D. 1322 ?

A. Walter Lollard, a German divine. Wicliff, the English Reformer, was born in England two years after, in the reign of Edward the Second ; he adopted similar views to Lollard, of the need of reform in the Roman church, and his followers were therefore called Lollards. Lollard signifying also a singer of hymns, the followers of Wicliff were designated Lollards as a term of reproach. Yet Wicliff did not preach in vain ; the real truths of Christianity were not to be longer hid, although the Roman pontiffs exerted themselves, like their pagan ancestors, to prevent the promulgation of the doctrine of Christ. Virtue, piety, and fortitude, distinguished the enduring Christian martyrs equally in modern as in ancient times of Roman persecution, and they leave a no less bright example for posterity to follow.

Q. What great change was taking place throughout Europe ?

A. A wish to improve ; and learning, which

had been advancing by slow degrees, diffused a spirit of inquiry and an exercise of sound judgment, which paved the way for the great events of the succeeding century. Italy, at the close of the fourteenth century, was the country most distinguished for learning. About this time the brighter day of mental improvement denoted the commencement of a new era; and as the dark ages have long since passed away, we shall now quit the middle centuries to delight in the sunshine of a yet more intellectual age than any preceding it, accomplishing such reform in religion as had not been since the days of the Apostles.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

*The Spanish king, Alfonso, obtains the throne of Naples. The Roman Church opposed by John Huss, Jerome of Prague, and the General Zisca. Printing invented. America discovered by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa. The Medici family at Florence, from its rise to the death of Lorenzo the Magnificent.*

Q. AFTER a contest for several years for the throne of Naples, what Spanish king obtained it?

A. Alfonso, king of Arragon, obtained the sovereignty of Naples, to the exclusion of the Angevin line.

Q. What was the character of Alfonso sur-named the Magnanimous ?

A. He was by far the most accomplished sovereign the fifteenth century produced. The virtues of chivalry were combined in him with the patronage of letters, and a real enthusiasm for learning, seldom found in a king, and especially in one so active and ambitious.

Q. The fifteenth century being the age of the revival of learning, what did this devotion to literature secure to Alfonso, in Italy ?

A. As sure a passport to general admiration as his more chivalrous perfection. Magnificence in architecture, and the pageantry of a splendid court, added to his living almost entirely at Naples, made the grateful pride of the Neapolitans forgive the heavy taxes his profuseness obliged him to impose.

Q. Who succeeded Alfonso ?

A. His son, Ferdinand : he was as dark and vindictive as his father was affable and generous. The barons, knowing his unamiable disposition, caballed against him, but in the end Ferdinand was established on the throne of Naples, A. D. 1464.

Q. The *great schism* continuing in the Roman church, what council attempted ineffectually to close it ?

A. The council of Pisa excommunicated and deposed two contending pontiffs, and elected a third, after which a general council was assembled at Constance, A. D. 1414, through the exertions of Sigismund, emperor of Germany.

Q. How did the *great schism* finally terminate?

A. The three competitors, after fruitless struggles, resigned, or were deposed; and Martin the Fifth was raised to the Papal throne.

Q. What other object, besides settling the disputes of the contending popes, engaged the council of Constance?

A. The destruction of John Huss, a native of Prague, in Bohemia; he was appointed, A. D. 1408, rector of the university of that city, but scandalized that Christianity was made a cloak to every sin, Huss openly exposed the anti-christian tenets of the Church of Rome. The neighbouring clergy, to whose irreligious lives the piety of this reformer was a reproach and glaring contrast, complained to Rome, and Huss was excommunicated by the pope, without being heard.

Q. What unscriptural mode of raising money had long been adopted by the Roman pontiffs, and the wickedness of which Huss particularly preached against?

A. The sale of indulgences, or the pardon of sins for money, the prices of crime being fixed as articles of commerce. Pope John the Twenty-

second, then at war with the king of Naples, wanting money, despatched a legate to Prague and other places, to raise troops by granting remission of sins to such as could pay, in order that he might prosecute the war. The spirited writings of Huss ruined the levy by shewing how contrary such purchase and pardon was to the doctrine of the gospel.

Q. Notwithstanding the emperor Sigismund gave Huss a safe conduct, on being summoned by the pope to give an account of his opinions, what became of him?

A. He was sentenced to death, and was burnt in the presence of seven Roman Catholic bishops with aggravated cruelty, A. D. 1415; but that Divine Master, in whose good cause John Huss suffered, supported him in the hour of trial; the utmost serenity, accompanied by a holy fortitude and inward peace, sustaining him to the last.

Q. What is a very striking circumstance in the fifteenth century, regarding Italy and Germany?

A. While learning was reviving, and the arts and sciences were making great progress in Italy, —in Germany, (the country which had possessed the greatest courage in opposing the pope at one time, but had submitted with the most abject meanness at another,) religion, that wisdom which is from above, was prosecuting the work of reformation, and the popes, who had triumphantly

compelled emperors to pay them homage on their knees, found their usurpations effectually opposed in that very country, in a way and manner which could have been least expected; so mysteriously do the ways of Providence work out great events.

Q. What reformer, soon after the martyrdom of Huss, experienced a similar death?

A. Jerome of Prague was burnt alive, a year after Huss had suffered. In the ancient history of Rome, as we have seen, the most cruel persecutions could not destroy the religion of Christ, but ended in the opponents being converted. So shall we find in modern Roman history, that persecution was ineffectual in extinguishing the spiritual light which spread abroad in the hearts of men, and wherever the Bible was read, the *whole volume, not parts*, Roman Christians abjured these errors. It is the unshackled and free use of the entire Scriptures, which can alone produce their proper effect on the mind; and thus those Christians still continue unreformed and unconverted, who have not the benefit of a free circulation of the Bible. But it must be hoped the time will come when they shall see their error, and Roman Christians be again worthy of commendation.

Q. What Bohemian general, in consequence of the persecutions of the Hussites, became their leader against Sigismund, emperor of Germany?

A. John Zisca: he gained several battles, and took the city of Prague, and proved a formidable opponent to Sigismund, who was so often defeated that at length he desired peace. Zisca, who had become totally blind, was on his way to arrange the terms, when death ended his valuable life, A. D. 1424.

Q. What important discovery took place which greatly assisted the reformation, and was the greatest check the Roman church had yet encountered?

A. The art of printing, invented about A. D. 1440. Coster of Haerlem, Guttenburg of Strasburg, and Faust (or Fust) and Schœffer of Mentz, with others, claim the honour of the invention, which does not rightly belong to one person, but to the improvements suggested by several. This discovery, from its immense utility in the diffusion of knowledge, forms an epoch in the history of man, and some writers assert that the middle ages end at this period.

Q. But in what sense was printing an enemy to the pope?

A. The Bible, which had been confined to a few, began to be better known, rare as it still continued; yet, according to the unfailing truth of prophecy, the knowledge of the Lord did spread, and in proportion as the Scriptures were studied, the pagan remains in the church of Rome were abandoned; of this the popes were



conscious, and vainly hoped, by persecution, to check the progress of the reformation.

Q. What was the first book which issued from the presses of Faust, or Fust, and his associates, at Mentz?

A. An edition of the Vulgate, commonly called the Mazarin Bible, a copy having been discovered in the library which owes its name to Cardinal Mazarin, at Paris.

Q. What amusement in the fourteenth century gave the first notion of taking off impressions on wood?

A. It is generally agreed that playing cards gave the first rude notion of taking off impressions from engraved figures upon wood; but to the great names of Faust, Schœffer, and Coster, the invention of printing is due. Sweynheim and Pannartz carried the art into Italy the same year.

Q. The fifteenth century is so prolific in events, that it is difficult to compress in a few pages what properly exhausts volumes. What great navigator was born at Genoa?

A. Christopher Columbus, the discoverer of America,\* was born at Genoa, A. D. 1442.

Q. His schemes of seeking a passage to India not being approved by his countrymen, in whose service did Columbus engage?

A. Spain was being governed by Ferdinand

\* America was discovered A. D. 1492.

and Isabella, who promoted his views, and the newly discovered continent was taken possession of by Columbus in their name.

Q. What injuries did Columbus meet with from persons envious of his great fame?

A. Notwithstanding the success of his voyages, through the misrepresentation of enemies, Ferdinand ordered an officer, named Bovadilla, to inquire into his conduct abroad; and this man sent Columbus back to Spain in irons. Columbus cleared himself of the charges against him, but felt the ill-treatment he had endured so greatly, that he desired the irons which had bound him might be buried with him.

Q. What favoured tribunal of the Roman church was established in Spain, in the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella?

A. The Inquisition, which was cruelly exercised against the Moors and Jews. Six thousand persons were burnt to death in the space of four years, and above one hundred thousand suffered from its extortions and personal torture. This inhuman tribunal has only been abolished in recent years.

Q. What was an *auto da fé*?

A. The burning of hundreds of persons together for their religion, after the far greater number had had the most barbarous treatment practised on them. Pagan history presents no cruelty of sacrifice or persecution greater than that which Roman Catholic Christians have inflicted

on those who came under the displeasure of the pope. The Inquisition was an easy and successful means of adding wealth to the Roman church; as it usually seized on the property of its unhappy victims.

Q. We will now turn from this sad subject to the revival of learning in the brilliant history of Florence; who were the Medici?

A. The family of the Medici were amongst the most considerable of the new or plebeian nobility. From the first years of the fourteenth century their name often occurs in the military annals of Florence.

Q. Throughout the long depression of the popular faction the house of Medici was always looked up to with hope; by whom was it now represented?

A. By Giovanni de Medici, whose immense wealth, honourably acquired by commercial dealings, had already rendered the name celebrated throughout Europe.

Q. What was the disposition of Giovanni de Medici?

A. He was of a mild temper, and averse to cabals. Giovanni did not attempt to set up a party, and was freely admitted to that share in public councils to which he was entitled by his eminence and his virtues.

Q. On the death of Giovanni, who became sad of the Medici family?

A. His son, Cosmo de Medici, inheriting his father's riches and estimation, with more talent and greater ambition, thought it time to avail himself of the popularity belonging to his name.

Q. An unprosperous war with Lucca and Cosmo incurring blame, what followed?

A. He was arrested by a gonfalonier, or magistrate, devoted to the Albizi family, and banished, but the next year he was recalled in triumph to Florence, and the Albizi were completely overthrown.

Q. Who were now at the head of the state of Florence?

A. The house of Medici, who made all their government conducive to hereditary monarchy, and numbers of noble citizens of the opposite party were driven from their country, and even put to death.

Q. For what was Cosmo de Medici celebrated?

A. For his patronage of learned men, liberality to the poor, and for being a friend to improvement and the fine arts, particularly painting, architecture, and sculpture. Cosmo obtained the honourable appellation of *father of his country*, and died, after ruling Florence with great splendour for thirty-four years, A.D. 1464.

Q. What opposition was made to Piero de Medici, his son?

A. Piero, though not deficient either in virtues or abilities, seemed too infirm in health for the administration of government. A strong opposition was formed against him, but the Medici were triumphant, and some of the most considerable citizens were banished.

Q. The oligarchy of Florence being destroyed from the revolution of 1466, what may be dated from that time?

A. An acknowledged supremacy in the house of Medici, the chief of which nominated the regular magistrates, and drew to himself the whole conduct of the republic.

Q. After the death of Piero, which of his two sons took the reins of government?

A. Lorenzo succeeded his father in the highest offices of the state; he was surnamed *The Magnificent*; but a party, jealous of the power of a single family, was soon formed to oppose him, and was supported by Pope Sixtus the Fourth and Ferdinand of Naples, whom he was compelled to resist.

Q. What occasioned the pope to stir up a conspiracy against Lorenzo?

A. Lorenzo having displeased the pope by resisting some of his encroachments, A.D. 1478, a conspiracy was planned against Lorenzo, and a man named Piazzi undertook to assassinate him and his brother, while the archbishop was to seize his palace.

**Q.** Where was the place chosen to perpetrate these murders, countenanced by Pope Sixtus the Fourth ?\*

**A.** In the cathedral, on the Lord's day, during the celebration of mass : the lifting up of the host was the signal agreed upon ; Julian, Lorenzo's brother, was killed on the spot, but Lorenzo escaped with a slight wound.

**Q.** What became of the archbishop ?

**A.** The archbishop being found in Lorenzo's palace, whither he had repaired to take possession, was arrested, as was also the assassin Piazzzi, and both were immediately hanged by the mob at the windows of the palace.

**Q.** In what noble manner did Lorenzo behave towards his enemies ?

**A.** He generously endeavoured to stop the resentment of his friends, who seemed determined to extirpate his foes.

**Q.** What other plot against his life, also headed by a high dignity of the Roman church, was frustrated ?

**A.** Cardinal Riario and some exiles endeavoured to assassinate him, but the plot was discovered.

**Q.** When the pope found the disgraceful part he had taken in attempting the life of the de Medici was known, how did he act ?

\* See Beginnings of European Biography. By the Rev. Isaac Taylor, page 32.

A. He laid Florence under an interdict, on account of the death of the archbishop, and, without dissembling his participation in the crime, declared war against the republic.

Q. What was passing at Milan at this time?

A. A similar scene of violence; and the church was again chosen for the perpetration of murder. Galeazzo, duke of Milan, the unworthy son of Francis Sforza, who had from his tyranny become detested by the Milanese, was assassinated in the church of St. Ambrose, at Milan.

Q. Who were implicated in the murder, and what became of them?

A. Jerome Olgiati was the person whom Galeazzo had grossly injured, and he induced Carlo Visconti and Lampugnani to assist in destroying the tyrant; the first suffered a cruel death by the executioner, but the other two were immediately put to death by the guards.

Q. Who succeeded the duke, and under whose care was he placed?

A. His son, John Galeazzo, who was placed under the protection of his mother, Bona of Savoy. Her guardianship was contested by John's uncles, but the dispute ended in Octavian Sforza being drowned in crossing the river Adda, and his brothers banished to different cities.

Q. We will now return to Florence; how did the war end with Pope Sixtus the Fourth?

A. The pope, terrified at the capture of Otranto by the Turks, made peace with Florence.

Q. What pope, after the death of Sixtus the Fourth, conferred a cardinal's cap on the son of Lorenzo, at that time only eight years old?

A. Pope Innocent the Eighth, desirous of the friendship of Lorenzo, made a cardinal of his son John, who afterwards became the celebrated Leo the Tenth.

Q. What was the character of Lorenzo the Magnificent?

A. Lorenzo the Magnificent was the great friend of science and of the fine arts, and the patron of learning. Although he completed the subversion of the Florentine republic, yet his splendid talents rendered him the shining character of the age. No charge of treachery or assassination has been substantiated against his memory, and by the side of Galeazzo or Ludovico Sforza, of Ferdinand or Pope Sixtus the Fourth, he shines with unspotted lustre.

Q. What celebrated Italian painter, architect, and sculptor, lived at this period?

A. Michael Angelo, (called Buonarotti, to distinguish him from some of the same name,) born in Tuscany, A. D. 1474. He established an academy at Florence, under the patronage of Lorenzo.



Q. In what year did Lorenzo de Medici die?

A. Lorenzo, deservedly called the Magnificent, died A.D. 1492.

Q. What followed the early death of Lorenzo?

A. Fresh revolutions took place in Florence, amongst the earliest of which the temporary downfall of his family is to be reckoned.

---

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

*Italy invaded by Charles the Eighth of France, who is soon compelled to quit the country. Ferdinand the Second succeeds to the throne of Naples. Leo the Tenth, of the de' Medici family, elected Pope. The Reformation spreads throughout Europe. The Church of Rome opposed by Luther, Melancthon, Calvin, and Zuinglius. The Confession of Augsburg, from which time the Reformers are called Protestants. Celebrated Italians, &c.*

Q. WHAT pontiff was elected on the death of Sixtus the Fourth, and who was equally unworthy in character?

A. Innocent the Eighth, A. D. 1484. His enmity to the king of Naples was soon evinced by interrupting the commerce formerly carried on; and the barons joining the pope, war against Naples was declared.

Q. How did the war terminate?

A. The papal troops were defeated, and peace was granted to the pope at the intercession of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain.

Q. What secretary to Frederick the Third of Germany was elevated to the papacy?

A. Æneas Sylvius; when secretary, he warmly supported the pre-eminence of councils over popes; but on his election to the papal chair, he made a complete recantation of his former assertions, shamelessly avowing, that as Æneas Sylvius he was an unpardonable heretic, but as Pius the Second he was an orthodox pope.

Q. Of what pope was it said, "that there was a Nero among the popes, as well as among the emperors" of Rome?

A. Alexander the Sixth, whose name was Borgia, one of those monsters of guilt which the world has rarely witnessed; he is said to have died by the poison which he had prepared for another.

Q. What fact astonishes the mind when reading of the crimes, the vices, and the ambition of the far greater number of popes, and the worldliness of the Papal See?

A. That the *infallibility of the pope* still continues a doctrine of the Roman Catholic church.

Q. In what did the popes particularly degrade their character in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries?

A. In their active interference in the politics of Italy; it however rent the veil of religious delusion which had so long imposed on the world, and the features of ordinary ambition appeared without disguise.

Q. What was the consequence, even in Italy, of this love of temporalities in the popes?

A. Excommunications and interdicts, which had made Europe tremble, became gradually despicable as well as odious, when they were lavished in every squabble for territory which the pope was pleased to call his own. Popery lost respect in Italy, and reform began to spread, but the Roman pontiffs successfully checked its progress in Italy, which country continues in the dark ages as regards religion.

Q. Whom did the pope and the duke of Milan invite into Italy, to dethrone the reigning king of Naples?

A. Charles the Eighth,\* king of France; but they soon betrayed him, and joined the king of Naples, whom they had invited Charles to depose.

Q. What were the proceedings of Charles the Eighth?

A. Charles entered Italy by the Alps of Savoy, passed through Florence with the pomp

\* Mr. Hallam's Middle Ages of Italy terminates with the invasion of that country by Charles the Eighth, in the fifteenth century. The writer of this outline has pursued the course of Italian history from that period to the present time, the nineteenth century, principally from the Edinburgh Encyclopædia, vol. xii. article "Italy."

of a conqueror, proceeded triumphantly to Rome, and obliged the pope to accede to a treaty dictated by him.

**Q.** What act of mean humiliation, extraordinary from its absurdity, did Charles pay to the pope?

**A.** Charles, after besieging the pope in Rome, and forcing him to submission, devoutly kissed his feet.

**Q.** What did the timid Alfonso the Second, king of Naples, do on hearing of the approach of the French king?

**A.** Alfonso was so frightened that he fled into Sicily, and entered a monastery, resigning in favour of his son, Ferdinand, who was compelled to take refuge in the Isle of Ischia.

**Q.** What was the consequence of such terror, which amounted almost to frenzy, in the Neapolitan king?

**A.** The king of France entered Naples in triumph, and was hailed Emperor and Augustus, but he lost his new kingdom in almost as short a time as he had obtained it.

**Q.** How came that about?

**A.** A league was formed against him by the Venetians, the pope, and the duke of Ferrara. This alliance was also joined by the perfidious Sforza, of Milan, who began to fear Charles might wish to possess himself of the duchy of Milan, in right of his grandmother, Valentina Visconti.

Q. When Charles found so powerful a confederacy against him, (for the German and Spanish monarchs also joined,) what was his next movement?

A. To quit Italy with as much rapidity as he had entered it; the French troops left at Naples were soon expelled. Charles died A. D. 1498, and Lewis the Twelfth succeeded to the throne of France.

Q. Who became king of Naples after the speedy departure of the French monarch?

A. Ferdinand the Second: the Neapolitans, heartily weary of even this short rule of the French, hailed him with acclamations.

Q. What was the result of the French invasion of Italy by Lewis the Twelfth?

A. The pope, thwarted in his projects against Ferrara by the interference of Lewis, set on foot an alliance, termed "The Holy League," for the purpose of expelling the French from Italy.

Q. Who were the confederates with the pope?

A. Ferdinand of Spain, the Venetians, and the Swiss, in Italian pay. The French general, Gaston de Foix, duke of Nemours, being killed, proved fatal to the French interests.

Q. What was the consequence of the dissensions which then arose in the army?

A. Milan was seized by the Swiss, who reinstated the family of Sforza in the person of Maximilian, son of Ludovico; France, invaded by the German emperor, and Henry the Eighth,

king of England, became the theatre of war, which caused the French to retreat from Italy.

Q. What other circumstance contributed to the peace of Italy?

A. The death of the contentious Pope, Julius the Second, A.D. 1513: he was succeeded in the papal chair by John de Medici, who assumed the name of Leo the Tenth.

Q. After the death of Lewis the Twelfth, Francis the First succeeding to the throne of France, what attempt did he make on Italy?

A. Francis the First, eager to recover Milan, invaded Italy, and obtained a decisive victory over the Swiss. Maximilian Sforza surrendered Milan, resigned his claim to the duchy, and retired to France.

Q. Alarmed at the successful invasion of the French, how did the pope act?

A. He hastened to reconcile himself to the French king, and contrived by flattery to gain over the unsuspecting Francis.

Q. Who next invaded Milan?

A. The emperor Maximilian, of Germany; he was repulsed and obliged to return to Germany, where he died, and the French king declared himself a candidate for the imperial crown, but without success.

Q. We must pass over the disputes between Charles the Fifth of Spain and Francis the First of France to inquire which monarch Leo the Tenth supported?

**A. Pope Leo the Tenth at first favoured Francis, the French king, but wishing to obtain Parma and Placentia, cities of Italy held by the French, he entered into an alliance with Charles, the German emperor, who proceeded to invade Lombardy, and after a short struggle, the French were expelled.**

**Q. Who were the leading monarchs of Europe at this interesting period of the sixteenth century?**

**A. Henry the Eighth reigned in England, Francis the First in France, Charles the Fifth was emperor of Germany and king of Spain, and Leo the Tenth was the celebrated pope at Rome, of the house of Medici. Leo died after holding the pontificate nine years.**

**Q. For what was Pope Leo the Tenth celebrated?**

**A. For his great superiority to all his predecessors in the encouragement he gave to learning and the fine arts; he endeavoured to improve the university of Rome; established the printing of Greek, under his immediate patronage; favoured the study of the oriental languages; purchased valuable manuscripts, &c.; but his heart being closed to the gospel, he persecuted the reformers.**

**Q. What dignified conduct did Luther display when called on by the pope's legate to recant his views of reforming the church?**

A. Luther refused to retract, unless convinced of error; and on further examination of the Scriptures, he became so perfectly convinced that the church of Rome was the idolatrous and anti-christian church of the Apocalypse, that he publicly avowed his separation from the Papal See.

Q. What other reformers, with equal intrepidity, openly separated from the Roman church, on account of its many corruptions?

A. Zuinglius of Zurich, and Calvin of Geneva: the blessing of scriptural knowledge became diffused, and the reformation was soon established over great part of Switzerland.

Q. What present did Leo the Tenth send to the elector of Saxony?

A. The *Golden Rose*, for which the elector had petitioned the pope four years before.

Q. What was the Golden Rose?

A. To the scandal of religion, this rose was deemed to represent the body of Jesus Christ. It was consecrated every year by the pope, and presented annually to one of the leading princes of Europe, who attached much importance to the gift.

Q. Why was this present from Rome so eagerly sought after?

A. As the pope bestowed it for a mark of particular regard, the gift of the Golden Rose was esteemed, because it shewed that the possessor was in favour at the papal court, and,



consequently, his worldly interests were more likely to prosper.

Q. What was the object of the Roman pontiff in making the present at that particular period, A. D. 1518 ?

A. To gain over the elector of Saxony; and Miltion, the pope's legate, was also commissioned to conciliate and win to his views, not only Frederick, but likewise his two enlightened counsellors, Spalatin and Pfeffinger, who, with the public generally, favoured a reform of the Roman Church, the errors of which Luther was openly attacking.

Q. Name some distinguished Papists who admitted the errors of Romanism, yet wanted courage to assist in the reformation.

A. Christophe of Stadion, bishop of Augsburg; Laurentius de Biba, bishop of Wurtzburg; John the Sixth, bishop of Meissen, who used to say, "As often as I read the Bible, I find there a different religion from that taught us;" John Thurzo, bishop of Breslau, whom Luther called the best bishop of the age; the learned Erasmus, and others.

Q. What observation did Erasmus make regarding the change of religious opinion then going on in Germany ?

A. "That the more irreproachable men's morals, and the more evangelical their piety, the more they are opposed to Luther."

Q. What learned Romanist was the patron and friend of Luther?

A. The enlightened Staupitz, vicar-general of the Augustines, and high in favour with the Elector Frederick. After Luther, who was the son of a poor miner, had quitted the study of the law, and had entered into a convent of Augustine monks, Staupitz presented him with a Bible; and it was from its study Luther began the great work of reforming the Roman Church.

Q. What other reformer lived at the same time as Luther, and was his particular friend?

A. The amiable Melancthon; his name was Schwarzerd.

Q. How came his name Schwarzerd to be changed to that of Melancthon?

A. Most of the learned men of those times translated their names into Greek or Latin; such being the custom, the learned Reuchlin, in admiration of his young relation, paid him that compliment, which became generally adopted. Both words signify *black earth*, the one in German and the other in Greek.

Q. Who protected Luther against his enemies, the pope and Charles the Fifth, emperor of Germany?

A. The elector Frederick, of the house of Saxony, took a decisive step, and established the reformed religion throughout his dominions, A. D. 1527.

**Q.** What gave rise to the term *Protestants* being given to all Christians who renounced the Roman Church?

**A.** The electors of Saxony and Brandenburg, the landgrave of Hesse, several other princes, and thirteen imperial cities and towns, solemnly *protested* against the pope's decrees. Hence the appellation of *Protestants* became common to all who embraced the reformed religion.

**Q.** What building at Rome did Leo the Tenth wish to complete?

**A.** The church of St. Peter's: Leo, wanting money, resorted to the sale of indulgences to procure the sum required.

**Q.** Who was employed by the pope to raise the money?

**A.** Tezel, a Dominican friar, was commissioned by the pope to go into Germany and elsewhere, and obtain money to replenish the papal coffers.

**Q.** What was the conduct of Tezel, or Tetzels, and what effect had it on the public mind?

**A.** Tezel, the pope's commissioner, full of his own importance, and well stocked with images of saints, together with a large assortment of relics, passports to heaven, and other papal frauds for sale, travelled through Germany like a mountebank, only anxious to get rid of his wares. The Germans, however, were now beginning to think for themselves on the important subject of religion, and Tezel found many places directly opposed to the hitherto profitable speculations of

Rome, the impiety of which, so flagrantly exhibited, produced a general feeling on the public mind in favour of the reformation.

Q. Who continued to expose the corruptions of the Roman Church ?

A. Martin Luther, a man distinguished for talents, scriptural knowledge, and piety, and who preached earnestly against the iniquity of papal presumption in pretending to sell the pardon of sins *past, present, and to come.*

Q. Of what university was Luther a professor ?

A. Luther was professor of divinity in the university of Wittemberg, in Saxony.

Q. By what means did the popes still hope to destroy the Protestants ?

A. By every device *persecution* could suggest ; but the greatest blow popery sustained was the reformation being brought about by Henry the Eighth in England, forwarded by his short-lived successor, Edward the Sixth, and which, notwithstanding the efforts of Mary to subvert it, was completely established under her successor, Elizabeth. John Knox, the Scotch reformer, also lived in the sixteenth century.

Q. What particularly distinguished the lives of those who embraced the doctrines of the reformation ?

A. Knowing there was no means of salvation except through our Saviour Jesus Christ, and that not any wilfully committing sin could be

acceptable in his sight, the reformers, like the early martyrs, became distinguished for the exercise of those christian virtues which always accompany true religion, as the tree is known by its fruits.

**Q.** What reformers drew up a clear statement of the Catholic Protestant faith, presented at the diet of Augsburg?

**A.** Luther and Melancthon, A. D. 1530 : it obtained the name of "The Confession of Augsburg." Luther, assisted by his friends, Justus, Jonas, and Melancthon, completed a translation of the Bible. At length, worn out by bodily infirmity, Luther died at his native place of Eisleben, near Erfurt, a town in Saxony, in the sixty-third year of his age, A. D. 1546.

**Q.** Charles the Fifth concluding a treaty with the pope to destroy the Protestant faith and its adherents, what followed?

**A.** Civil war throughout Germany, which ended in the defeat of Charles; the consequences were, "The Religious Peace" was established, A. D. 1555, and the complete security of religious freedom to the Protestant states.

**Q.** What number of Protestants suffered in the Low Countries from the cruel duke of Alva, who was employed by the bigoted Philip of Spain?

**A.** The duke of Alva is said to have boasted that in five years and a half upwards of eighteen thousand Protestants suffered death by the executioner, and a far greater number were put to

the sword in the towns which he took, and on the field of battle.

Q. Interesting as the reformation is, we must return to the fine arts in Italy. Name some celebrated Italians of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries.

A. Michael Angelo, Raphael, Domenichino, Leonardo da Vinci, Mazzaoli, Peruzzi, painters. Ariosto, Vida, Pulci, poets. Poggio, a great linguist: he wrote a history of Florence.

Q. What Italian politician was famed for writing a book containing the most unworthy maxims for men in power?

A. Machiavel, a politician and historian: but his book entitled "The Prince" abounds in rules of crooked policy, and an utter disregard of every honourable principle where interest is concerned. The name Machiavel is therefore often used to express an artful, designing person.

Q. Who was Palladio, also Rizzio?

A. Palladio was an Italian architect. Rizzio, an Italian musician; he became the favourite of Mary, queen of Scotland, and was murdered.

Q. Who was Strozzi?

A. Strozzi, born in Italy, was called the Walking Philosopher; he taught Greek and philosophy at Pisa, Florence, and Bologna; and died A. D. 1565. This extraordinary man travelled through great part of Europe, Asia, and Africa, on foot, and yet managed to prosecute his studies.

Q. Who is said to have restored the Latin tongue to its original purity?

A. Valla, an eminent Italian critic. But knowledge was rapidly progressing over Europe, and the light then shining has continued to increase to the present day.

---

## CHAPTER XL.

*The French invade Italy. The Pope made prisoner. The de Medici family expelled Florence; are restored, and take the title of Grand Duke of Tuscany. The Spaniards invade Italy. Insurrection at Genoa. Revolt at Naples against the Spaniards. Masaniello, the fisherman of Naples, assassinated. The French attack Genoa. The peace of Ryswick, Galileo, the Florentine astronomer, &c.*

Q. Who succeeded Leo the Tenth in the pontificate at Rome?

A. Adrian the Sixth, who had been preceptor to the emperor Charles the Fifth, and regent of Spain: he died shortly after his elevation. Julio de Medici succeeded, by the name of Clement the Seventh.

Q. What followed the misconduct of Bonni-vet, sent into Italy by Francis the First, king of France, to attack the Milanese?

A. The French army, commanded by the noble Chevalier Bayard, was completely routed by the Imperialists, and their gallant general slain in the retreat near Rebec.

Q. When did the Chevalier Bayard (a French nobleman) first distinguish himself in Italy?

A. The Chevalier Bayard, in his youth, accompanied the French king, Charles the Eighth, into Italy, where, for his gallantry, that monarch rewarded him with five hundred crowns, and gave him also the title of "Chevalier sans peur et sans reproche." He was also much esteemed by the succeeding French kings, Lewis the Twelfth and Francis the First. Bayard was in the service of the latter when he was killed.

Q. Irritated by his reverses in Italy, what resolution did Francis the First take?

A. That of again entering Italy, to take the command in person; and not doubting of success, moreover being joined by the pope and the Florentines, he laid siege to Pavia.

Q. What was the result of the battle of Pavia, A. D. 1524?

A. The French were defeated, and Francis the First, king of France, was taken prisoner.

Q. What conspiracy did the treacherous Pope Clement the Seventh set on foot against the emperor?

A. A conspiracy was formed by Pope Clement the Seventh, the duke of Milan, and the



Venetians; they attempted to gain to their interest Pescara, the imperial general, by the offer of the crown of Naples.

Q. How did the honourable-minded Pescara receive this base proposal?

A. The marquis of Pescara nobly refused a crown at the cost of his honour; he immediately laid siege to Milan, and forced the duke to surrender.

Q. What success had Charles of Bourbon, who was in the imperial interests, and sent to besiege Rome?

A. Bourbon was killed, but his troops, commanded by Phillibert of Chalons, prince of Orange, made themselves masters of Rome, and the city was left a prey to the rapacity of the soldiers.

Q. What became of Pope Clement, the Seventh, who had shut himself up in the castle of St. Angelo, in Rome?

A. Famine soon obliged him to surrender, but he remained a prisoner in the castle, from which he contrived to escape, while his ransom was being negotiated.

Q. What last effort did the Florentines make towards recovering their liberty, when they found the pope, who was of the Medici family, a prisoner?

A. The confinement of Clement gave the last impulse to the republic of Florence; the adherents of the Medici family were expelled,

and the statues of the popes Leo and Clement were destroyed.

Q. How did these quarrels between the French and German sovereigns and Italian cities terminate?

A. The reverses of the French king obliged him to listen to terms of accommodation, and the peace of Cambray was concluded, A.D. 1529, by which he renounced all claim to Milan, Genoa and Naples, and, what was still more degrading, left his Italian allies to the mercy of the emperor. Clement the Seventh died a few years after.

Q. Who succeeded Clement the Seventh in the see of Rome?

A. Paul the Third, whose prudent government maintained for some time longer peace in Europe.

Q. What celebrated admiral of the Genoese lived in the sixteenth century?

A. Andrew Doria: the republic of Genoa, in commemoration of his services, built him a splendid palace, which travellers still visit, at Genoa.

Q. The peace of Cambray does not appear to have been lasting; what followed the next invasion of Italy by the French?

A. The French were once more compelled to make peace, but civil dissensions continued to agitate Italy. Alexander de Medici, rendering himself hateful for his tyranny at Florence, was murdered.

Q. After the death of Francis the First, who succeeded to the throne of France?

A. Henry the Second became king of France, and assisted Octavio Farnese to recover Parma.

Q. What have you to say concerning the wars which were renewed in Italy?

A. They present a melancholy picture of the state of the country, which suffered from the invasion of two contending powers, while internal jealousies, heightened by the intrigues of the popes, added to the miseries of the times.

Q. What family again acquired power, and became the chief family of Florence?

A. The influence of Cosmo de Medici was daily increasing; the possession of Florence and Leghorn gave him the keys of what are called the Fetters of Tuscany; he had also received the principality of Piombino, and his ambition was now turned to the acquisition of Sienna.

Q. What was the result of the war with Sienna, A. D. 1553?

A. The Siennese defended themselves with determined valour for ten months, and at length capitulated on honourable terms.

Q. In what way did Cosmo de Medici at last obtain Sienna?

A. Philip the Second, who was made king of Spain by the abdication of his father, Charles the Fifth, also emperor of Germany, wishing to gain over the Italian princes to counterbalance the authority of the pope, conferred on Cosmo the investiture of Sienna, in consideration of some money due to him, and on condition of

his furnishing a body of troops in case of any attack on Milan and Naples.

Q. What singular misgivings of a bigoted, but ambitious mind, were displayed in Philip of Spain towards the pope ?

A. Philip was prevented by religious scruples from attacking the pope openly, but ordered the duke of Alva to invade the papal territory, thus exhibiting the duplicity and artifice of a true adherent to popery.

Q. What pope deserves honourable mention for moral courage in wishing to reform the errors of the Roman Church ?

A. The virtuous pope, Marcellus the Second. He died on the twentieth day of his pontificate, while meditating plans for the reformation of the Church of Rome.

Q. Did his successor, Paul the Fourth, pursue so worthy a design ?

A. No : Paul the Fourth was of an intolerant and severe disposition, filled with extravagant notions of the power and authority of the Roman See, and was very angry at the pacific termination of the diet of Augsburg.

Q. What was the success of the application of the Roman pontiff, Paul the Fourth, to France for assistance against the Spanish king ?

A. The pope, alarmed for his safety, had recourse to intrigue ; he sent his nephew, Cardinal Caraffa, to Paris for succour, and, by the united influence of the Lorraine family, the

queen and Diana of Poitiers succeeded in prevailing on Henry to violate the league with Philip, and the pope was soon in a condition to set the king of Spain at defiance.

Q. What French commander entered Italy to assist the pope?

A. The French army was commanded by the duke of Guise, who, after relieving Rome, marched towards Naples, but the Spanish duke of Alva declined an engagement; the allied army soon became wasted by sickness and weakened by the dissensions of its commanders.

Q. How did the artful pope, Paul the Fourth, act when he saw it his interest to change his politics, on the recall of the duke of Guise from Italy for the defence of France?

A. He hastened to appease Philip of Spain, which the superstitious veneration of that king for the Roman See rendered easy; but the pope obliged the duke of Alva to solicit forgiveness on his knees.

Q. What passage in the tenth chapter of the Acts of the Apostles forms a strong contrast of the proud homage exacted by the popes with the meek christian spirit of St. Peter?

A. When Cornelius, the Roman centurion, sent for St. Peter, "as Peter was coming in, Cornelius met him, and fell down at his feet and worshipped him. But Peter took him up, saying, Stand up; I myself also am a man."

**Q.** What title did Cosmo de Medici assume after his investiture of Sienna ?

**A.** The title of Grand Duke of Tuscany, which appellation continues to be used by the dukes of Tuscany at the present day.

**Q.** At the peace of Chateau-Cambresis, when peace was restored to Europe, what were the principal articles regarding Italy ?

**A.** The restoration of Savoy to Emanuel Philibert, who had married a sister of the French king, Henry the Second ; his troops then leaving Italy. Montferrat was restored to the duke of Mantua, and the island of Corsica to the Genoese, whose independence was now acknowledged.

**Q.** In what praiseworthy manner did the duke of Savoy exert himself on his return to Italy, where he was welcomed by his Italian subjects ?

**A.** This prince, though accustomed to war, had the wisdom to prize the greater advantages of peace, and exerted himself, in concert with the Venetians, in defending the frontiers of Italy, and preventing its being again exposed to the devastations of foreign armies.

**Q.** What popes, after the death of Paul the Fourth, A. D. 1589, followed his example ?

**A.** The conduct of Pius the Fourth and his successors, Pius the Fifth, and Gregory the Thirteenth, also aided to the tranquillity of Italy.

**Q.** What Italian female, of the house of Medicis, induced Charles the Ninth, king of France, to destroy the Protestants throughout his dominions, which is generally termed "The Massacre of St. Bartholomew?"

**A.** His mother, Catherine of Medicis, a cruel and ambitious woman. After the death of Charles the Ninth, and of his brother, Henry the Third, Henry the Fourth became king of France.

**Q.** What was the condition of the Protestants in Holland?

**A.** Long continued cruelties towards them at length excited a revolt, and the prince of Orange was elected stadtholder: this illustrious man was murdered, Philip the Second of Spain offering a large sum of money for his head. This is the same Philip who had scruples of conscience to make war on the pope, yet caused the death of his son, Don Carlos, and now openly offered a reward for the perpetration of murder!

**Q.** What edict did Henry the Fourth, king of France, issue for the protection of the Protestants?

**A.** The edict of Nantz, A. D. 1598, by which the Protestants of France were secured in the free exercise of their religion. The Duke de Sully was the celebrated prime minister of Henry the Fourth.

**Q.** What king succeeded to the throne of France, after the assassination of Henry the Fourth?

A. Lewis the Thirteenth. His mother, Mary of Medicis, was regent during his minority, a weak woman of restless ambition; who displeased the nobility by her partiality for her Italian courtiers. The talented Cardinal Richelieu was minister of France.

Q. What insurrection took place in Genoa?

A. Quarrels arose at Genoa between the old and new nobility, and an insurrection of the people against their divided lords, which however was fortunately soon adjusted, and Genoa has since then continued to enjoy internal tranquillity.

Q. What occasioned a contest, which once more laid Italy open to foreign invasion, at the commencement of the seventeenth century?

A. The succession to the duchy of Mantua became a subject of dispute; the dukedom being claimed by the duke of Nevers, the duke of Guastalla, and Charles of Savoy, who asserted his family claim to Montferrat, and obtained the support of the Spaniards.

Q. Whose assistance did the duke of Nevers solicit?

A. That of the French king, Lewis the Thirteenth. He was also seconded by the Venetians, who dreaded the consequences of Mantua falling under the dominion of Spain.

Q. The duke of Savoy dying, what followed?

A. Lewis, who had entered Italy, concluded a peace with his son.



**Q.** Which of the remaining competitors was successful?

**A.** The intrigues of the duke of Richelieu procured the acknowledgment of the duke of Nevers' right to Mantua, which was delivered up to him.

**Q.** What occasioned the war between the pope and the dukes of Parma, Modena, and Tuscany, A.D. 1641?

**A.** The male line of the duke of Urbino becoming extinct, the duchy was claimed by the grand-duke of Tuscany in right of his wife, but Pope Urban the Eighth seized it as a vacant fief of the papal see. The Barberini (nephews of the pope) finding him firm in refusing to grant them the investiture of Urbino, persuaded him to join them in invading the duchy of Castro, near Rome.

**Q.** To whom did that duchy belong, thus unjustly trespassed on by the pope and his nephews?

**A.** To the duke of Parma, who, thus assailed, allied himself with the dukes of Tuscany and Modena, and marched to attack the papal army near Bologna, although with very unequal force, and gained a signal victory.

**Q.** This enterprise succeeding, what became of the defeated Barberini?

**A.** They were forced to take refuge in Ferrara, and Farnese entered and laid waste Comagna. The armies of Modena and Tuscany

were equally successful, and the pope at length concluded a peace with the dukes. Urban the Eighth died shortly afterwards.

Q. What is the next event of interest in the state of Italy?

A. After the death of Lewis the Thirteenth and of his minister, (Cardinal Richelieu,) the government of France was left in the hands of Cardinal Mazarin, who acted as prime minister to Queen Anne of Austria, regent during the minority of her son, Lewis the Fourteenth. Mazarin entered warmly into the affairs of Italy, and was much displeased that Innocent the Tenth had been elected pope.

Q. Cardinal Mazarin regarding the pope as his personal enemy, what interest did he endeavour to obtain in Italy?

A. He used all his influence to gain over the Italian princes. Thomas of Savoy joined him, and gained over the duke of Parma; and thus hostilities commenced.

Q. What was the success of the French expedition into Italy?

A. The first was a failure, but the second proved more fortunate, the island of Elba and the principality of Piombino surrendering to the French arms.

Q. What peculiar tyranny did Sicily and Naples suffer, while subject to Philip the Fourth, of Spain?

A. The severity of the duke of Arcos, at Naples, roused that city into rebellion.

**Q.** What low person headed the tumult at Naples?

**A.** Aniello, (commonly called Masaniello, from an amalgamation of his Christian name, Thomas,) an uneducated fisherman, made himself chief of a party, seized the palace and the viceroy, committed many excesses, and took revenge on the oppressors of the people.

**Q.** For how long did this extraordinary man, Masaniello, retain the title of Lieutenant-General of the King of Spain?

**A.** For ten days Masaniello exercised the most unlimited authority, but so sudden a rise brought on madness; and becoming suspicious and cruel, he was assassinated on the eleventh day of his short and turbulent reign.

**Q.** The Neapolitans continuing in arms, whom did they choose for their leader?

**A.** Assuming a republican form of government, Francis Toraldo, prince of Massa, was made commander.

**Q.** Determined, however, to throw off the yoke of Spain, what measures did the Neapolitans take to effect it?

**A.** So great was their aversion to the Spanish sway, that the Neapolitans actually applied to the pope to confer it on some prince of French extraction.

**Q.** What French nobleman happened to be at Rome at the time?

**A.** Henry, duke of Guise, who, being of a

chivalric temper, without waiting for aid, at once went to Naples, and offered his services to the republic, which were accepted, and he was appointed general, with the title of Duke or Doge, but aspiring at the sovereignty, fresh disturbances took place; and treachery again made the Spaniards masters of Naples.

Q. What became of the duke of Guise?

A. He was taken prisoner to Spain, where he remained five years.

Q. What became of the treacherous Gennaro Annese, who, jealous of the duke, had betrayed Naples to the Spaniards?

A. The Spaniards revenged themselves with the greatest cruelty on the unfortunate Neapolitans; even Gennaro, to whom they were obliged, but whom they most probably feared, perished on the scaffold, a punishment fully merited for betraying his country. The Spaniards recovered Elba, Piombino, and Casal, and peace took place throughout Italy.

Q. What was the result of the French attacking Genoa for its attachment to the Spanish interests?

A. The French having reduced part of the city to ashes, obliged the doge and four of the principal senators to proceed to Paris, and there humble themselves before Lewis the Fourteenth.

Q. What was the conduct of Lewis the Fourteenth towards Pope Innocent the Eleventh?

**A. Haughty and overbearing.** To check the ambition of Lewis, the league of Augsburg was formed by the emperor Leopold with Holland, Spain, Sweden, Denmark, and Savoy; and on the succession of William the Third to the English throne, A. D. 1689, that nation also joined the league.

**Q.** What was the success of the French, who again carried war into Italy?

**A.** The commencement of the war in Italy was unfavourable for the allies; all Savoy, with the greater part of Piedmont, fell into the hands of the French.

**Q.** After farther contest, what secret arrangement was made between Lewis and the duke of Savoy?

**A.** Weary of the war, the duke of Savoy deserted the cause of the allies, and made peace with Lewis.

**Q.** What was this pacification termed?

**A.** "The Neutrality of Italy." The duke received back Savoy, with all the other places occupied by the French, and Adelaide, the eldest daughter of Victor Amadeus, duke of Savoy, was betrothed to a grandson of the French king.

**Q.** What followed this desertion of the duke of Savoy from the allies?

**A.** A general peace soon took place, called the Peace of Ryswick, A. D. 1695.

**Q.** What society of Christians were great sufferers for the cause of religion in this century?

**A.** The Waldenses, in Piedmont, who were repeatedly persecuted by fire and sword, by the dukes of Savoy; and the cruelty of Victor Amadeus towards them makes it surprising that any remained. The Waldenses claim particular respect, not only for having, from an early period of the dark ages, always opposed the corruptions of the church of Rome, but on account of their professing a purer faith, and rejecting popish superstitions, the virtue and simplicity of their lives proving the reality of their Christian faith.

**Q.** What act of tyranny was exercised towards the French Protestants by the king of France, Lewis the Fourteenth, A.D. 1685?

**A.** The revocation of the edict of Nantz, which, as a toleration of their religion, had been granted about a century before to the Protestants by Henry the Fourth.

**Q.** What was the consequence of annulling the edict of Nantz?

**A.** More than half a million of French subjects sought refuge in other countries, from the rage of the unrelenting soldiery.

**Q.** What celebrated Italian astronomer was twice sent to the Inquisition for his pursuit of science?

A. Galileo, the son of a nobleman of Florence. He was chosen professor in the university of Padua, and invented the *telescope*, &c., but his love of science was a crime in the eyes of the Inquisitors.

Q. The Italian poets Dante, Boccace, or Boccacio, and Ariosto, have already been noticed; inform me of a few others?

A. Amongst many Italian poets may be named Guarini; who wrote the *Pastor Fido*. Metastasio, celebrated for his sonnets, and also for his dramas, operas, and oratorios. Riccobini, a dramatic writer. Bonarelli, a pastoral poet, and Tasso, the well-known author of a fine poem, entitled "*Jerusalem Delivered*."

Q. What Italian poet is supposed to have introduced blank verse among the moderns?

A. Trissino, an Italian poet of the fifteenth century.

Q. Who was Paul of Venice?

A. Father Paul, as he is usually styled, was a very learned divine in the Roman church, and with his follower, Father Fulgentio, greatly inclined to the reformation.

Q. Name a few Italian sculptors and architects.

A. Bernini, Carlo Maderno, Michael Angelo, (also a painter,) Canova, &c.

Q. What error did Socinus, a native of Italy, adopt in religion after renouncing the Roman church?

A. Socinus, an Italian, became the leader of a new sect in religion, called Socinians: he renounced the Pagan remains in the Roman church, but denied the divinity of our Saviour, thus only making a fearful exchange of error.

Q. Italy is renowned in artists; name some of the most distinguished.

A. Cimabue, who is called the father of Italian painting: he lived as far back as the thirteenth century. Michael Angelo, Raphael, Leonardo da Vinci, Titian, Salvator Rosa, Guido, Carlo Maratti, Corregio; also three celebrated painters of the same family, Lewis, Hannibal, and Augustine Carracci, Tintoret, Julio Romano, &c.

Q. What Italian was famed for playing on the violin?

A. Corelli, who lived in the eighteenth century. Also Geminiani, a musician and composer. Farinelli and Madame Catalini were celebrated Italian singers. Madame Malibran, also a famed singer and actress, who died but a few years since.

Q. Who were the two Scaligers, natives of Italy?

A. Scaliger the elder, who was versed in languages, science, and literature, and wrote Latin poems, &c. Joseph Scaliger, who lived a little later, was a chronologist, critic, and historian.



## CHAPTER XLI.

*War carried by France and Spain into Italy. Peace takes place. The order of Jesuits suppressed by Clement the Fourteenth. Reinstated by Pope Pius the Seventh. War with France. Napoleon Buonaparte, called the Hero of Italy, conquers the country. Murat, king of Naples, is shot. Napoleon exiled. The Bourbons restored to the throne of France; a general peace follows. Austria paramount in Italy. The emperor of Austria crowned king of Lombardy at Milan, A.D. 1838.*

Q. WHAT new subject of contention caused a war in Italy, at the beginning of the eighteenth century?

A. The Spanish succession. Charles the Second, of Spain, dying without children, bequeathed his dominions to the duke of Anjou, who was acknowledged king, by the title of Philip the Fifth.

Q. In what way did that affect Italy?

A. The German emperor, Leopold, also made claim in behalf of his second son, the arch-duke Charles, and finding it vain to make attempts on Spain, marched a considerable army into Italy, under the command of Prince Eugene.

Q. What part did the Venetians take in this test?

A. The Venetians observed a strict neutrality, till Prince Eugene attempted to enter the Milanese territory, when he was attacked near Chiani, by the united troops of the duke of Savoy and Mareschal Villeroi, whom he completely defeated.

Q. What town was surprised and taken by the Germans ?

A. Cremona : the general was taken prisoner, and a revolt at Naples, in favour of Charles the Third, was with difficulty quelled by the Spanish viceroy.

Q. To what town did Prince Eugene next lay siege ?

A. To Mantua ; but the arrival of the French duke of Vendome with forces from France, obliged him to give up the undertaking.

Q. France, Spain, and Germany had now troops in Italy ; passing over some few years of contest, how was the disputed succession finally settled ?

A. By the peace of Radstadt ; Philip the Fifth being acknowledged king of Spain, while the kingdom of Naples and the duchy of Milan were left in possession of the emperor of Germany.

Q. What shortly occasioned fresh disturbances in Italy ?

A. The right of foreign succession in Italy, which kept up a perpetual warfare. The result

of these contests was fatal to the German interests, and Naples and Sicily fell once more into the hands of Spain. Milan, and many other cities of Lombardy, were taken by the French.

Q. These wars of succession being foreign, although taking place in Italy, more need not be said than to ask in what year were the states of Italy again settled?

A. War at length was terminated by the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, A. D. 1748, by which the states of Italy were distributed in the way in which they remained till Italy was conquered by Napoleon Buonaparte.

Q. How was Italy divided at the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle?

A. The king of Sardinia and the duke of Modena (who had also been expelled) were reinstated in their dominions. Charles remained king of Naples and Sicily; but it was secured that these crowns should not be united to Spain. Don Philip was left duke of Parma and Placentia, while Milan was restored to Austria, and the arch-duke Leopold became grand-duke of Tuscany. The pope, whose territory had been respected, remained as before, and peace was fully restored.

Q. What was the object of the order of the suits, founded in the sixteenth century by natius Loyola?

A. The society of Jesuits was to establish spotic dominion over the minds of men, in

order the better to obtain wealth and power, to uphold the darkest errors of the Roman church, and to forbid the Bible to be read, except that which had been altered to suit the purpose of Rome.

Q. In what artful disguise did the Jesuit, Robert de Nobili, conduct the celebrated Indian mission of Madura?

A. Disguising himself as a Bramin, he announced himself to the natives as such from a distant country; produced a parchment of writing, forged by himself in the ancient Indian character, which stated that the Bramins of Rome were older than those of India, and that the Jesuits were descended from the god Bramah.

Q. When questioned by the Bramins concerning the authenticity of the parchment, in what way did Nobili confirm it?

A. He, on oath, wickedly declared it to be a *real* document, and thereby gained an immense number of proselytes: other Jesuits followed, and kept up the imposture.

Q. What Jesuit conducted the gunpowder plot in England, in James the First's reign?

A. Garnett, superior of the English Jesuits. The object of this plot was to destroy the king and parliament by gunpowder.

Q. What French reformers did the Jesuits successfully oppose in France, and persecute for their religion?

A. The Jansenists. But the triumph of the Jesuits was short, for being detected in some fraudulent mercantile transactions, they were expelled from France.

Q. After the Jesuits had established their dominion in Paraguay, in South America, what followed ?

A. The wicked order of Jesuits was altogether abolished by the enlightened Ganganelli, known as Pope Clement the Fourteenth. This superior minded man is supposed to have fallen a victim to Jesuitical revenge, and his lingering death to have been caused by the effects of slow poison, infused in a cup of chocolate, given to him by an officiating priest.

Q. What is the derivation of the word *Pope*, and when did it become the peculiar title of the Bishop of Rome ?

A. The word Pope is derived from the Greek word Πάππας (pappas), and in Latin *Papa*, signifying *Father*, a name anciently given to *all* Bishops ; (the Bishops of the Greek Church continue to be so called ; ) but in the Roman Catholic Church, by order of Gregory the Seventh, it became the peculiar title of the Bishop of Rome.

Q. What occasioned the expulsion of the whole of Jesuits from Portugal ?

A conspiracy for the assassination of the King of Portugal, under the guidance of some Jesuits. The readiness of the order of

Jesuits to commit any crime to forward their worldly interests, has made the name of Jesuit a proverb for hypocrisy and vice, although, in appearance, they affect to maintain religion and virtue.

Q. How long did the petty states of Italy enjoy a cessation of hostilities ?

A. From the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle till after the commencement of the French revolution. Italy is happy in having no event, beyond the suppression of the Jesuits, to relate interesting to the historian.

Q. What improvements took place under the government of Joseph the Second, and his benevolent brother, Leopold of Tuscany ?

A. Many abuses were reformed, the situation of the people was improved, and agriculture was encouraged at Milan and Florence.

Q. What calamity destroyed many cities in Sicily, and Calabria in the south of Italy ?

A. A dreadful earthquake, in 1791, laid waste the country, ruined cities, and occasioned the death of thousands of people.

Q. What melancholy events were passing in France, and which greatly interested Italy ?

A. The French revolutionists beheaded the king and queen of France, Lewis the Sixteenth, and Marie Antoinette, A.D. 1793. This dreadful catastrophe made those Italian princes related to the Bourbon family look with alarm on the growing military spirit of the republic.

**Q.** What countries united with Italy in declaring war against France, which was demoralized by a frantic revolution?

**A.** The king of Sardinia, and the other Italian states, joined in league with the Austrians, Prussians, and British, in declaring war against France.

**Q.** What were the successes of the French in the campaign in Piedmont, in 1794?

**A.** The French were successful. The defeat of the Sardinians near Milan made the French masters of the city.

**Q.** Notwithstanding this, what island in the Mediterranean Sea submitted to the British?

**A.** Corsica, which acknowledged George the Third, king of England, for its sovereign.

**Q.** What troops for a short time checked the republican army of France?

**A.** The Austrian and Sardinian forces for a short period arrested the progress of the French revolutionists in Italy.

**Q.** What general was appointed by the French Directory to invade Italy at that time?

**A.** Napoleon Buonaparte, by birth a Corsican, who eventually became one of the most remarkable men any age has produced. To great talents and military skill was added boundless ambition, and by his extraordinary genius, profiting by the advantages the troubled state of France presented, he rose from a private

station to be not only one of the greatest generals the world has produced, but emperor of France, king of Italy, &c., with kingdoms at his disposal.

Q. Although it detains us from the campaign of Italy, yet, as the emperor Napoleon was a remarkable character, how did he further raise himself by marriage?

A. After a series of surprising successes, he compelled the emperor of Austria to make peace, and Buonaparte, divorcing his wife Josephine, married the arch-duchess of Austria, Maria Louisa, daughter of the emperor, A.D. 1811: the empress had a son, who was immediately created king of Rome.

Q. Having seen the rise of Buonaparte, now relate his fall, which may be considered to commence from A.D. 1812, when he invaded Russia.

A. The almost total loss of his army in the Russian campaign, was followed by his signal defeat at the battle of Leipsic. Napoleon also experienced many losses in Spain, where the great English general, the duke of Wellington, gallantly supported the honour of the British name. The Bourbon family were restored in 1814, and Lewis the Eighteenth became king of France, while the dethroned emperor was allowed to retire on a pension to the island of Elba, on the coast of Italy.



**Q.** Did Napoleon remain contented with this exile?

**A.** It could hardly be supposed he would ; and he secretly collected a small army, and, in A. D. 1815, landed in France. The allied troops soon assembled, and Buonaparte was finally conquered at the famous battle of Waterloo. He fled from the field of battle, and after signing his abdication, seeing no means of escape, he sought the sea-side, and placed himself under the protection of a British man-of-war. Napoleon was afterwards sent an exile to the island of St. Helena, where he died, A. D. 1821.

**Q.** The campaigns of Buonaparte fill too many volumes to admit narrating, but as he was called the "Hero of Italy," give some account of his victories in that country.

**A.** Forcing the bridge of Lodi in the face of the Austrian cannon was but a prelude to his future success. Florence and Milan soon yielded to his arms.

**Q.** After marching to Rome, how did he treat the pope?

**A.** Not with much ceremony. Napoleon forced the pope to make a treaty with the French republic, and to pay a heavy contribution. He then recrossed the Alps to attack the emperor of Austria in his own dominions.

**Q.** What afterwards happened to Pope Pius the Sixth?

A. He was expelled from Rome, and died in exile.

Q. By whom was he succeeded?

A. He was succeeded by Pius the Seventh, who, regardless of the moral evil the so doing inflicted on the world, restored the order of Jesuits, A.D. 1814.

Q. The emperor of Austria finding that peace only could check his progress, what treaty concluded the war?

A. The treaty of Campo Formio, by which the north of Italy was organized into the *Cisalpine republic*.

Q. What cities formed the Cisalpine republic in Italy?

A. Milan, Mantua, Modena, and Bologna.

Q. Buonaparte was then employed by the French Directory in subduing other countries, where we shall not follow him, but inquire when he again entered Italy?

A. In A. D. 1800; being then first consul. Napoleon gaining the decisive battles of Novi and Marengo over the Austrians, restored the Cisalpine republic, and returned to Paris.

Q. After defeating the Russians and Austrians, what part of Italy was the emperor of Austria obliged to give up?

A. After the battle of Austerlitz, the emperor of Austria was forced to relinquish Lombardy, and in the same year the victorious Buonaparte

took on himself the title of king of Italy, having completely subdued that country.

Q. How did Buonaparte, who had become emperor of France, settle the quarrels between the king of Spain and his son, Ferdinand?

A. He obliged both Charles and Ferdinand to resign the crown, which he conferred upon his own brother, Joseph, then king of Naples, and gave the kingdom of Naples to his general, Murat, who had married his sister.

Q. Who was appointed by Napoleon viceroy of Lombardy?

A. Eugene Beauharnois, (son by a former husband of Josephine, Napoleon's first wife,) and under his mild administration Lombardy began to recover from the misfortunes of war.

Q. What nominal title was given to the duke of Parma?

A. He was made king of Etruria.

Q. What became of Murat, king of Naples, owing to his joining Napoleon on his quitting Elba?

A. The Austrians invaded Naples, and Murat, abandoned by his troops, left the country. In 1815, Murat returned to Calabria with a few troops, was taken prisoner, and shot.

Q. How was Italy divided after the defeat of Buonaparte, when a general peace throughout Europe took place, and the Bourbons were restored to the throne of France?

A. In A. D. 1818, Victor Emanuel, king of Sardinia, was reinstated in Savoy and Piedmont, with the addition of the city and territory of Genoa. Ferdinand the Fourth was also restored to the throne of Naples and Sicily.

Q. What duchies comprised the Venetian states?

A. The duchies of Milan, Mantua, and Modena, with the cities of Verona, Vicenza, and Padua. Venice, and its former territories in Istria and Dalmatia, are now comprised in the kingdom of Venice and Lombardy, and belong to Francis the Second, emperor of Austria.

Q. What cities were conferred on the empress Maria Louisa, after the dethronement of Napoleon Buonaparte; she not accompanying her husband to St. Helena?

A. The duchies of Parma and Placentia were settled on the Austrian arch-duchess Maria Louisa, the once empress of the French. The succession was settled on her son, the king of Rome, who was afterwards styled duke of Reichstadt. He is since dead.

Q. What Italian cities constitute the territory of Florence?

A. Lucca, Sienna, and Pisa, form the kingdom of Etruria. Florence, the capital, is one of the finest cities in Italy; its duke is styled Grand Duke of Tuscany.

**Q.** Who succeeded Pius the Seventh, after being restored (at an advanced age) to the ecclesiastical states?

**A.** Leo the Twelfth: Pius the Eighth then succeeded, and at his death Gregory the Sixteenth was elected pope, who resides at Rome.

**Q.** We have now arrived at the year A.D. 1840; tell me, has any great change taken place in Italy since the peace of Europe?

**A.** Not any; the Austrian power continues to preponderate; the troops of the emperor can at any time march over the country, so as effectually to prevent any political revolution becoming of consequence. Italy may be considered as belonging to the Austrian empire.

**Q.** When was the reigning emperor of Austria crowned king of Lombardy?

**A.** The emperor of Austria was invested with the iron crown of Lombardy, A.D. 1838; and although Italy continues shackled as regards civil and religious liberty, yet great general improvement has taken place. It only remains to be observed, after having pursued the chequered course of its history for nearly three thousand years, that it now abides in perfect tranquillity, peaceable in its pursuits, the rich museum of antiquity, and the distinguished school of the fine arts.

## CHAPTER XLII.

*The entrances into Italy. Florence. Rome: the Amphitheatre, Temples, Tombs, &c. Church of St. Peter. Jupiter Capitolinus. The Vatican, &c. Naples, Pompeii, Herculaneum. The Bay of Baia. Bridge of Caligula. Baths of Nero. Puteoli, where St. Paul landed on his way to Rome.*

Q. ITALY is too interesting to be parted from without some further slight notice. What difference is there in its appearance when entering from the north, or on arriving into Italy by the south?

A. The entrance into Italy,\* whether by the north or south, is alike most beautiful, yet differing in character. The vast altitude of the mountains in the alpine north displays scenery of the most sublime grandeur, while in the south the deep blue sea washes the Italian shore, and the graceful elevations of land, rich in the luxuriance of nature, interspersed with ruins, mingling with rural life, render it a lovely and enchanting country.

\* The writer of this Outline entered Italy at the south, through the straits of Messina to Naples; visiting Rome, Florence, &c., crossed the three principal roads to the north, the Simplon, Mount Cenis, and that from Leghorn to Genoa. Some few observations concerning Italy at the present day may not be unacceptable to young people, for whom this Outline of Roman History is written.

**Q.** What two famous military roads, constructed by Napoleon, and equalling any ancient work of the Romans, lead into Italy on the north?

**A.** The road of the Simplon from Switzerland crosses the Alps, amidst the most terrifically grand scenery, into Italy, where it descends and passes by the beautiful lakes of Como and Maggiore, leading to Milan. The other road takes the direction from France through Les Echelles de Savoie, and crosses the Alps over Mount Cenis, (from the summit of which is a magnificent view of Lombardy,) into Italy, entered by the road to Turin. On the Italian side of the Alps is the town of Suza, where the remains of an ancient triumphal arch are to be seen.

**Q.** What is the striking feature when entering Italy from the south?

**A.** The straits of Messina separate Messina, in Sicily, from Calabria, the most southern coast of Italy. Sicily, in this part of the country, (where the volcano of Etna is visible,) is picturesquely mountainous. The straits dividing this fertile region from the bleaker mountains of Calabria, present a scene of exquisite beauty, rivalled only by the entrance into Italy by the bay of Naples.

**Q.** What volcano is situated near Naples?

**A.** Mount Vesuvius: it has not height to be a grand object, (when not in action,) but con-

tributes greatly to the interest of the bay. The islands of Capri, Ischia, Nisida, and Procida; also the city of Naples, and other objects, make this celebrated bay unique in beauty.

Q. What are the principal rivers in Italy ?

A. The Tiber, the Po, the Adige and the Arno. Italy contains one particularly beautiful waterfall, called the Falls of Terni; the falls of Tivoli, near Rome, are also much admired.

Q. What are the chief lakes in Italy ?

A. The lake of Como and Maggiore, containing the Boromean Islands, noted for their beauty; the lakes of Perugia, Bolsena, Thrasmene, Lugano, and others; lakes Lucrine and Agnano, near Naples; the former famous for its oysters.

Q. In what does the appearance of the city of Venice differ from other countries ?

A. Venice is built on a cluster of small flat islands on the coast of Italy, to the north of the Adriatic sea, and presents the curious and unusual sight of canals passing through the streets, even to the houses, out of which, instead of getting into a carriage, the water obliges the inhabitants to step into a boat, called a gondola. Canals also pass through the streets in Holland, but leave room on each side for vehicles; but it is not so in Venice, where water is the conveyance throughout. Venice has numerous fine palaces, which make it an imposing city.



**Q.** Which is the finest church in Venice?

**A.** The celebrated church of St. Mark. Venice is said to have no streets, because of the extreme narrowness of the space of the back communications; the front entrances are by the canals of this grand and curious city.

**Q.** What is there striking in the approach of the city of Genoa?

**A.** Genoa is situated on an amphitheatre of hills, which rise into mountains around the gulf, forming very beautiful scenery. The Strada Balbi is literally a street of palaces. The Durazza and Sera palaces are the finest; that of Andrew Doria, the worthy Genoese admiral of old, is near the port. Genoa is famed for its manufacture of velvet.

**Q.** What is to be noticed of Florence, the capital of Tuscany?

**A.** Florence is a handsome city, watered by the river Arno. The Austrian arch-duke, Leopold the Second, is the present grand-duke, and the flourishing and happy condition of Tuscany is an evidence of his good government. The planting and platting of that species of straw, known as the Leghorn straw, for bonnets, gives occupation to many of the peasantry between Florence and Leghorn. Training the vines from tree to tree adds greatly to the beauty of the country, which is rich in natural productions; corn, wine and oil, are the products of its soil,

**Q.** Name some of the public edifices in Florence.

**A.** The cathedral, the outside of which is inlaid with black and white marble—the belfry stands quite apart from the building; the church of Santa Croce, &c.; the mausoleum of the Medici family; the bridge of Della Trinita, over the Arno; the public gardens; and the Pitti palace; are a few of the prominent objects of attraction.

**Q.** What does the Pitti palace contain?

**A.** A magnificent museum of antique statues and paintings, by the most celebrated masters. Tuscany is famed for its Pietra Dura, (inlaying marbles like mosaic) and alabaster manufactories.

**Q.** What is often a temptation to Protestants in Roman Catholic countries, but particularly in Italy, where there is so much to attract?

**A.** That of neglecting a due observance of the sabbath. The Sunday amongst Roman Catholics being a day of complete thoughtlessness, the opera house, theatres, and places of amusement, are always open, while the general gaiety which prevails offers a temptation to Protestants to be less observant of the divine command of “Thou shalt keep holy the sabbath day,” than when at home, let that Protestant home be in what country it may.

**Q.** Repeat from “Thomson’s Seasons,” some lines, which, if rightly impressed on the

youthful heart, tend to enforce the wise restraints of moral discipline.

A. "Father of light and life, thou Good Supreme!  
O teach me what is good; teach me Thyself!  
Save me from folly, vanity, and vice,  
From every low pursuit, and feed my soul  
With knowledge, conscious peace, and virtue pure;  
Sacred, substantial, never-fading bliss."

Q. In what palace does the present pope, Gregory the Sixteenth, reside?

A. At the pontifical palace of the Quirinal. The Quirinal hill on which it stands, carries the mind far back into the ages of antiquity, but the seven hills on which Rome was built, from the changes which have taken place, are no longer easy to be distinguished.

Q. Which is the most striking ruin at Rome in the present day?

A. The finest ruin in Rome is the amphitheatre or Coliseum, built by the emperor Vespasian; also called Flavian, from the emperor's name Flavius. Other fine ruins are the triumphal arches of the emperors Titus, Severus, and Constantine; Trajan's column; the Pantheon, &c.

Q. Who built the Pantheon?

A. It was built by Agrippa, son-in-law of Augustus Cæsar, about twenty-seven years before the Christian era; dedicated to Mars (the god of war) and Jupiter Avenger, in memory of the victory obtained by Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra.

Q. What did this magnificent temple contain ?

A. The statues of all the gods, in bronze, in silver, in gold, or in precious stones, which gave it the name of *Pantheon*, a Greek word, signifying an assemblage of all the divinities.

Q. What change has the Pantheon, or Rotunda, (so called from its circular form,) undergone by different popes ?

A. Pope Boniface converted it into a church, dedicated it to the Virgin and the holy martyrs, and Gregory the Fourth consecrated it to all the saints. Christian images, of less value than the Ionic Pagan ones, now fill the places of the more costly ancient images—a melancholy evidence of the corrupt state of Christianity at Rome.

Q. What ancient mausoleum at Rome is now a fort, called the Castle of St. Angelo ?

A. The once splendid tomb of the emperor Adrian, situated near the bridge of St. Angelo, which crosses the river Tiber. From the time of the fall of the Roman empire, it has served for a place of defence. The tomb of Cecilia Metella is likewise an immense mausoleum. That of Caius Cestius is built in the form of a pyramid. The last monument is in the English burying ground, which has of late years been permitted to be enclosed.

Q. Are there any traces of the famous Tarpeian Rock at Rome ?

A. The Tarpeian Rock is pointed out, but being at the present day in the midst of the houses of modern Rome, and greatly reduced in height from accumulated rubbish, it is too much altered to possess more than an imaginary interest.

Q. What is the appearance of the ancient Forum at the present day ?

A. The Forum, or Campo Vaccino, as it is sometimes called, (from the place having at times been used as a cattle market,) has disappeared in the lapse of ages. It is at present an open space. Three columns of the temple of Jupiter Tonante stand conspicuous ; a fragment of the Temple of Concord, also called Castor and Pollux, and other ruins, are to be seen, which must almost have joined it ; but the ancient Forum having been covered to a considerable depth with earth, no idea can be formed of what the Forum was from what it is, the ruins now visible having formed no part of it.

Q. Describe the Forum as it was anciently built.

A. The Forum was an oblong square, and is said to have been surrounded by a colonnade of two stories ; the senators met in the Curia, or senate chamber, and the people in the part called the Comitium.

Q. " The thunders of the Vatican " being a

common expression met with in books, explain the meaning.

A. The Vatican palace at Rome is the palace of the popes, and as the pope dates his bulls from thence, the thunders of the Vatican mean the orders he issues from the papal palace.

Q. When was the Vatican palace built?

A. Some writers date its commencement as far back as Constantine; however that may be, Charlemagne resided in it when at Rome, and since then it has been constantly enlarged by successive popes. It is an immense building; and the library, which contains nearly forty thousand manuscripts, is a room above two hundred feet in length. It has also a museum, several chapels, and contains the finest paintings of Raphael and Michael Angelo.

Q. It is one of the singular features of Rome to abound with ruins of antiquity in the midst of a modern, bustling city. What astonishes in examining the ruins of the palaces and baths of the emperors?

A. Their immense extent. The *Thermæ* (so called from a Greek word for baths) of Dioclesian and Maximin are the most considerable, but those of Livia, Titus, Decius, &c., equally shew the magnificent plan on which such buildings were constructed. At present, all are in a useless state of ruin,\* but the paintings on the

\* The writer of this Outline, &c., when at Rome, was present at the commencement of the excavation of a house; a piece of the stucco was given to her by the proprietor of the ground, and she has presented it to the museum of the Mechanics' Institute in Guernsey.

walls continue in many places in fine preservation. Much the same observations may be made of the palaces of the Cæsars, which are little more than heaps of brick work: brick is a sad falling off in the beauty of a ruin. The ancient Roman brick is thinner than that made by the moderns.

Q. How was ancient Rome supplied with water?

A. By aqueducts, the extensive ruins of which, in the plain outside of Rome, make an interesting appearance.

Q. We must, however, quit Roman antiquities, which are far too numerous to detail, to inquire what church of modern Rome is the largest in Europe?

A. St. Peter's. This superb building, which took many centuries to complete, was one of the causes of the reformation. Leo the Tenth, granting pardon for sins to those who would contribute to defray the expense of the building, Luther and other pious men exposed the guilt of so doing. People, on becoming acquainted with the doctrine of our Saviour and the apostles, learnt that true Christianity was not a matter of *worldly purchase* and of mere form and ceremony, but that the Gospel taught a *spiritual service*, which was to affect the conscience, and improve its professors in wisdom and virtue; moreover, man was to receive his faith in the exercise of his judgment.

Q. What image is particularly venerated and bowed down to in the church of St. Peter's, at Rome?

A. A bronze figure of St. Peter (supposed formerly to have been that of the heathen god Jupiter Capitolinus). It is conspicuous in a sitting posture, and the great toe of the statue is usually kissed after entering the church by Roman Catholics. The incessant kissing has completely worn off the bronze, so that the brightness of the *brass* toe is a contrast to the rest of the image.

Q. What divine command is here publicly broken and disregarded by Roman Christians?

A. The second commandment, which says: "Thou shalt not make to thyself any graven image, nor the likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the water under the earth; thou shalt not bow down to them," &c.

Q. Mention some other passage of Scripture by which reverence to images is strictly forbidden.

A. The Old and New Testament abound with instructions warning men from such a heathen practice. In the book of Deuteronomy the passage declaring that the honour due to God is to be given to none other, is repeated by our Saviour in the fourth chapter of St. Matthew, saying: "Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve." To flee from



idols was likewise solemnly impressed on all converts to Christianity by the mouth of the apostles.

Q. Name a few other fine churches at Rome, besides that of St. Peter's, which is larger than St. Paul's cathedral, in London.

A. Santa Maria Maggiore, and that of Santa Giovanni Laterano, with many others. Rome is said to contain nearly three hundred churches. The decorations, the lights which are kept constantly burning, the variety of saints dressed like puppets, the superb robes of the priests, the pomp of ceremony, genuflections, the incense, and ringing of bells, carry the mind back to ancient Rome and to pagan rites, not changed but modified.

Q. What beautiful works of art are carried to great perfection at Rome?

A. The inlaying of Mosaic, which resembles the finest miniature painting; also an imitation of pearl, known by the name of Roman pearls.

Q. Which of the fountains, for there are several, is the most worthy of notice at Rome?

A. The fountain of Trevi: the water of which is made to flow into a marble basin, issuing from rocks, which are ornamented with fine emblematic statues.

Q. Which ancient circus is in the best state of preservation remaining at Rome?

A. That of Caracalla. The surrounding walls

still remain, with seats for the spectators; and posts mark where the chariots used to stand before the race commenced. The races usually consisted of four chariots, with two or four horses.

Q. What distinguishes the works of the ancient Romans, not only in Rome, but in every country to which their conquests carried them?

A. The great solidity and durability of their public works. They seem to have done well whatever was worth doing, and in that respect may teach the moderns a useful lesson. The roads constructed by the various consuls in Italy still remain; the most famous of which is the Appian Way, paved with large blocks of stone by Appius Claudius. When various consuls made or improved the roads in Italy, they were called after their names, as *Via Aurelia*, *Via Appia*, *Via Vitellia*, &c.

Q. What inconvenience attends both the traveller and the antiquarian at Rome?

A. Rome having been so often burnt down, destroyed and rebuilt, the ancient city has become gradually buried, so that the surface of the earth, at the present day, is in many places very considerably above what it was formerly, and the excavated temples often present no more than columns; this renders it very difficult (if not impossible) to determine to what particular edifice they had originally belonged, and leads to great diversity of opinions concerning the remains of antiquity.

Q. How is it that in one of the churches at Rome\* the capital (or top) of a pillar only appears, the remaining part being under ground?

A. The interior of the church having been dug up after the outer walls were raised, the capital of a column unexpectedly protruded, and was suffered for convenience to remain in this singular manner, just rising above the pavement. The church was proceeded with and completely finished, without regard to this discovery; and thus part of a heathen temple is in a Christian church. *Another worship* is indeed admitted; yet how changed that Christian faith since the time of the apostles!

Q. What besides the mixing of Pagan and Christian temples and ceremonies does this circumstance shew?

A. It perhaps conveys the best idea of the great alterations in the ground which have taken place, and that many modern buildings now stand on the embedded remains of ancient Rome.

Q. On what occasion was the triumphal arch of Septimus Severus erected, which is still in good preservation at Rome?

A. The Roman senate erected this fine triumphal arch in honour of the emperor Severus and his sons, Caracalla and Geta, A.D. 205, after defeating the Parthians. This monument was

\* The writer of this Outline saw, when at Rome, what she relates, but has forgotten the name of the church.

half hidden with rubbish, and has only been excavated within recent years.

Q. When did the Romans commence dividing time into weeks?

A. Dio, a writer who flourished under Severus, says it took place a little before his time, being derived from the Egyptians.

Q. What is called "the last year of confusion?"

A. The year previous to Julius Cæsar regulating the calendar; which year consisted of fifteen months, or four hundred and forty-five days. Julius Cæsar, by the skill of Sosigenes, an Alexandrian astronomer, made a new calendar, and this, which is called the Julian or solar year, continues in use to this day in all Christian countries, without any other variation than that of the old and new style, which was occasioned by a regulation of Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, A.D. 1582.

Q. In what consisted the change made in the calendar known as "new style?"

A. Pope Gregory the Thirteenth, observing that the vernal or spring equinox, which at the time of the council of Nice, A.D. 325, had been on the 21st of March, then happened on the 10th, by the advice of astronomers caused ten days to be entirely sunk and thrown out of the current year, between the 4th and 15th of October. This alteration of the style was immediately adopted by all Roman Catholic countries, but not in

Britain till the year 1752, from which time the new style was adopted as it had been before in the other countries of Europe, Russia excepted.

Q. What other alteration was made in England in the same year?

A. The same year also another alteration was made in England, that the legal year, which before had begun on the 25th of March, should begin upon the 1st of January, which took place 1st January, 1752.

Q. What appearance has the city of Rome at the present day?

A. Rome is a handsome city, about fifteen miles in circumference, enclosed, as it was anciently, with walls; the entrance by the Piazza del Popolo (the gate of the people) is very striking; an Egyptian obelisk stands in the centre of an open space, and four churches are so built as to command as many streets, of which the Corso is the principal, a mile in length.

Q. What towns are celebrated at a short distance from Rome?

A. Tivoli, Albano, and Frascati.

Q. Name some of the palaces containing a fine show of paintings?

A. The gallery of the Caracci, Colonna, Corsini, Farnese, and other palaces, possess very valuable pictures of the Italian school.

Q. The theme of Rome is inexhaustible. We will now pass on to Naples; and in our way, inform me what are the Pontine Marshes?

A. A tract of undrained country, in which herds of buffaloes range, twenty-six miles from Rome, on the road to Naples. The unhealthy vapours exhaled from the Pontine Marshes are felt at a great distance, and cause serious fevers.

Q. What is the situation of Naples?

A. Particularly beautiful. The city is built on a hill; and the castle of St. Elmo is on the summit, immediately looking into the bay, nearly opposite to which the volcano of Mount Vesuvius is seen.

Q. What towns, destroyed by the lava and ashes of Vesuvius, in the reign of Titus, have been in part excavated?

A. Herculaneum and Pompeii. The lava which overwhelmed the first becoming solid as stone, the town of Portici is built over it, and consequently the excavations are not considerable, from the immense expense attending the labour, as well as from fear of endangering the modern town. Pompeii is laid open, it having only been covered with ashes. The streets of this ancient city are narrow, and the houses small; the painting on the walls inside the shops is singularly fresh; the forum; a theatre for tragedy and one for comedy; likewise numerous tombs outside the gate, &c., are in a very perfect state.

Q. What is the Solfatara?

A. An extinct volcano near Naples, but so inflammable, if a stick is stuck in the ground it

will take light. Sulphur and alum works are carried on there.

Q. Name some ancient monuments of the Romans near Naples?

A. The ruins of the temples of Neptune and Serapis; the grotto of the Cumæan Sybil, and numerous places of interest, derive additional beauty from the loveliness of the surrounding scenery.

Q. To what purposes is the lava of Mount Vesuvius applied?

A. In paving roads, &c.; ornaments are also made of it. Naples is famous for its manufactories of coral; also for macaroni, which forms the chief article of food amongst many of its inhabitants, and is eaten by Italians generally. The beggars of Naples, called Lazzaroni, are numerous.

Q. What mountains extend through Italy from north to south?

A. The Apennines, inferior to the Alps in sublimity. Italy contains many beautiful lakes, and the practice of training the vines in festoons from tree to tree, realizes the sweetest fancies of poetry.

Q. What museum at Naples contains a great number of ancient curiosities, found at Herculaneum and Pompeii?

A. The Studio at Naples is a delightful museum to visit, from the rareness and variety of its

remains of Roman antiquity, and no less of Egypt and Greece.

Q. For what public building is Naples famed?

A. For its opera house, exceeded only in size by that of Milan, which is the largest in Europe.

Q. What royal palace is about sixteen miles distant from Naples?

A. The modern palace of Caceria; the marble staircase of which is particularly handsome. A little out of the direct road is to be seen a very fine ancient Roman aqueduct, of three tiers of arches.

Q. Name some of the objects of interest on and about the shores of the bay of Baiæ, near Naples?

A. The grotto of Pausilippo, as the ancient Roman excavation of a tunnel, through a considerable length of rock, is called, and which, by shortening the distance, is an equally great convenience to the moderns; the tomb of the poet Virgil is on the summit. It leads from Naples to Baiæ, the favourite summer residence of the ancient Romans; no trace of their once elegant villas now remains, although amidst a heap of stones that of Cicero is pretended to be pointed out.

Q. What appearance has the ruined bridge of Caligula in the bay of Baiæ?

A. It is a very picturesque object; but opinions



vary as to whether it was built by that emperor. Baiæ is rich in antiquities; and the baths of Nero, the temple of Venus, with various other ruins, "tell the tale of other times," and remind the traveller of a different age, of another people, and of the multitudes of the human race which have lived since then, and are gone!

Q. We have seen Italy under the kings, the commonwealth, the emperors, the destruction of the Roman empire, and the many changes in Italy from that time to the present; what besides Pagan history do the shores of Baiæ recall?

A. The arrival of the Apostle Paul at the ancient town of Puteoli, where he remained seven days on his way to Rome. But when recalling the persecutions of the early martyrs, their piety, virtue, and exemplary lives,—the evidence of a true faith,—we are also reminded that no sooner did persecution cease, and the Christian church of Rome enjoy ease and security, than it fell away into error, and, to secure earthly dominion, corrupted Christianity by incorporating Paganism into the sacred precincts of its temple.

Q. Notwithstanding that our Saviour has expressly said, "Search the Scriptures," what followed the apostasy of the Christian bishop of Rome, on exalting himself to be Roman pontiff?

A. The Pope forbade to "Search the Scriptures;" the Word of Life was prohibited to be read, and thus the Bible, as to its spiritual truths, remained unknown, except to a persecuted few,

until the period of the reformation, the history of which great event proves that a knowledge of the Word of God is the subversion of the unscriptural assumptions of the Papal See.

Q. What is the great bond of union among Protestants, and in evidence of their faith in what do they all agree?

A. The propagation of the Gospel amongst all nations, commanded by our blessed Saviour.

Q. What is the state of Italy regarding religion at the present day?

A. The Roman church remaining unchanged in its errors, the people continue deplorably ignorant of the real truths of the Gospel. The most absurd miracles and legends are believed in, enslaving the mind of the multitude, not only in Italy, but wherever the Roman Catholic religion prevails. It is the Sacred Volume only which can enlighten the understanding, and happy will that day be for Italy, when, putting away idols, St. Paul's Epistle to the Romans shall be resorted to, with the other books of holy writ, for their rule of faith, of hope, and moral improvement.

Q. Notwithstanding the opposition of the church of Rome to disseminating the uncorrupted text of Scripture, what is wonderfully and strikingly evident?

A. That the utmost efforts of Roman power, exerted as it has been through a long course of ages, is ineffectual to prevent that which God has

willed. Protestant countries, laudably promoting Bible and Missionary Societies, and England the foremost, are spreading the truth abroad, thus becoming the praiseworthy agents in furthering a great prophetic end. May the Divine blessing prosper their truly Christian labours! For the words of the evangelical prophet are being proved, as they have been proved for above two thousand years, and that prediction of Isaiah is still fulfilling, and moreover will continue to be fulfilled, which declares, that "the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea."

THE END.

## LIST OF BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

HOULSTON AND STONEMAN,

65, PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON.

---

**ENGLAND AND ITS PEOPLE**; or, a familiar History of the Country and the Social and Domestic Manners of its Inhabitants. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 5s.

"One of the best histories for the young we have seen."—*Athenæum*.

**A GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF THE PENTATEUCH**, designed, by a Series of Questions, to point out the Treasures of Wisdom and Knowledge contained in the Mosaic Economy. Intended for Colleges, the higher Classes in Schools, and Students in Divinity. By J. THOMPSON, M.A. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

"The Author has accomplished his object in a most masterly style."—*Christian Remembrancer*.

**ENGLISH HISTORY**, in the way of Question and Answer. Including all the Principal Events from the Conquest to the present Time, and intended to be committed to Memory. With the Heads of the Kings. 18mo. 6d.

**ROMAN HISTORY**, in the way of Question and Answer. Including all the Principal Events from the Building of Rome to the Destruction of the Empire by the Goths and Vandals. With numerous Wood Engravings. 18mo. 6d.

**GRECIAN HISTORY**, in the way of Question and Answer. With numerous Wood Engravings. 18mo. 6d.

**GENERAL READING FOR SCHOOLS OF MUTUAL INSTRUCTION**. With Illustrations. 18mo, sewed. 6d. each.

Part I. Miscellaneous.  
II. British Geography.  
III. English Grammar.  
IV. Esther Sorrel, and her Brother and Sister.  
V. Natural History.—Cats and Dogs.

Part VI. Parables & Conversations.  
VII. Country Walks, No. I. and II.  
VIII. The Christian Pilgrim.  
IX. Winter Evening Conversations on Natural History.  
X. and XI. *In the Press*.

**THE LADY OF THE MANOR**, a Series of Conversations intended for the Middle and Higher Ranks of Young Females, previous to Confirmation. 7 vols. 12mo. at 7s. each.

**ROXOBEL**. 3 vols. 12mo. 21s.

"A lovely exhibition of christian character, displayed in the various stages of life, amid circumstances of trial and enjoyment."

**STORIES EXPLANATORY OF THE CHURCH CATECHISM**. 12mo. 5s.

"Let any one read Mrs. Sherwood's beautiful Stories on the Church Catechism and he will be satisfied that even catechisms can be bewitchingly interesting." *TODD*.

**THE GOVERNESS**; or, the Little Female Academy.  
12mo. 5s.

•• Besides numerous incidents and conversations, the following Tales are included in the Work :

History of Princess Rosalinda.

Albert de la Hauteville.

Miss Fanny; or the hard-hearted little Girl.

Emily and her Mother.

Lady Faulconbridge and her Children.

**THE INFANT'S PROGRESS**, from the Valley of Destruction to Everlasting Glory. 12mo. 5s.

**THE INDIAN PILGRIM**; or, the Progress of the Pilgrim Nazarenee, from the City of the Wrath of God to Mount Zion. 12mo. 4s.

**THE FORTESCUE FAMILY**; a Tale for Young Persons, in which the Principle of Christian Charity is familiarly Illustrated and Explained. By Mrs. STREETEN. 12mo. 5s.

**MY MOTHER'S STORIES**. By ESTHER COPLEY.  
12mo. 5s. Containing—

THE ORPHANS.

VICISSITUDES.

MAIDEN LADIES.

THE EMIGRANTS.

THE FIRST SERVANT.

VANITY OF HUMAN WISHES.

"All distinguished by an amiable feeling and a good moral."—*Spect.*

**PAPA'S BOOK**; designed to Teach his Little Ones to Think, to Observe, and to Reason. By the Rev. B. H. DRAPER. With numerous Wood Engravings. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**ALFRED MORELAND**, the Would-be Traveller; being an interesting and instructive Account of the Habits and History of the larger Quadrupeds. By the Author of the "Moral Budget of My Uncle Newbury," "The Juvenile Culprits," "The Juvenile Moralists," &c. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

**A BROTHER'S GIFT TO A SISTER**. Edited by ROBERT DALY WALKER. 12mo. 5s.

**TALES OF WOMAN'S TRIALS**. By Mrs. S. C. HALL.  
Post 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**THE BACHELOR'S HOLIDAYS**. By a Theoretical Philanthropist. 12mo. 5s.

**LETTERS** on the Importance, Duty, and Advantages of **EARLY RISING**. Addressed to Heads of Families, the Man of Business, the Lover of Nature, the Student, and the Christian. By A. C. BUCKLAND. 12mo. 5s.

**OUR NEIGHBOURHOOD**. By Mrs. CAMERON. 12mo. 5s.

**THE TWO MOTHERS**; or, Memoirs of the Last Century. 12mo. 5s.

**THE USE OF TALENTS**. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

**THE FRUITS OF EDUCATION**; or, the Two Guardians. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**THE NURSERY MAGAZINE**, 4 vols, at 3s. 6d. each.

**MATERNAL SOLICITUDE FOR A DAUGHTER'S BEST INTERESTS**. By Mrs. TAYLOR. Thirteenth Edition. 3s. 6d.

**PRACTICAL HINTS TO YOUNG FEMALES**, on the ties of a Wife, a Mother, and a Mistress of a Family. By Mrs. TAYLOR.

